

Diary of Ancient Rites

A Guide for the Serious Practitioner



Volume One

Revised edition

Michael E. Anderson

Chapter One

An Ignorant man will lash out in
anger

A Wise man will smile in wisdom

First it must be said, the study of the occult, the supernatural, and what Christians term witchcraft is not evil. It is not the worship of the devil but a clear look into the spiritual beings. For centuries man has developed and attempted to explain how he came into being. We strive to answer the questions of life and death and accept what feels right for us. Unfortunately there are no easy answers and many opinions. Each person must determine their own beliefs based on what is right for them. Unlike the sect called Christians, those following different paths rarely make the claim of being the only way into the afterlife of happiness. This book contains great information

and history on the development of Christianity as well as simple ways to live and learn the ways of nature based pagan religions no matter which tradition you have chosen to pursue.

In the beginning, the first beings looked at the world through eyes so see the wonders yet undefined. All existence was strange and unknown. Imagine, total darkness and then suddenly light. The trees all majestic and tall with other shapes, strange moving forms as the breeze blew. I can imagine the new sensation of the sun and breeze on skin newly created. On this wonderful planet, all things created and granted by the creator for these beings use and pleasure. For lack of a better word we will use the word, the Gods or God to describe these beings. Our creator (The Gods), were caring provider for the creatures they had spawned on this new creation. These beings cared for their creation so much, they sent guardians, after their own kind and in many forms to teach us all the knowledge of the universe. Man and the Gods walked together hand in hand in the first days of awareness, which biblically can be called The Garden of Eden, a

realm between the heavens and earth.

We hope when reading this book it will reawaken the knowledge and gifts you have been taught to suppress. Rekindle the flames of knowledge that burn inside you. May it aide you in recognizing those feeling you feel stir inside your mind in the middle of the night. We hope by reading this book and learning the ancient rites it will give you a new beginning and the courage to use that call in the night to make your life and world better.

The questions you should ask yourself at this point is extremely simple. Are ready to commit to yourself to others and the universe? Are you ready to swim against the stream that is society? Are you ready to cast aside old stereotypes and gain back your legacy of creation? Are you ready to rethink the truth of your parents and the generations?

In order to succeed, you must forget the old dogma and embrace a new exploration of spiritual growth. Trust in the deep feelings that stir inside you and the logic of your own mind. In reclaiming your place as a child of the creator once again, you

will be questioning that which you have been taught. The teachings of man have isolated you from all things of the creator and caused this world to be a gray place with war and pestilence. We hope to make this a world of light again. You will feel apprehensive at first because things you learn will contradict things taught to you in the past. You may even begin to regret the teachings and habits that have been a part of your socialization. We must ask you to forgive those that have taught you and love them enough to pass on what you discovered and if they are not receptive, then love them nonetheless and try again to be tolerant. For hopefully that time of awakening will also come to them.

As you learn and walk the path that is magic, the eyes of your mind will open and you will hear the call of the ancient spirits. Some have reported that their life takes on a new form and meaning. This shall be your quest to commune with your creator as decreed in times of old. Are you ready to become a person living outside the sphere of predictable cause and effect ? If your answer is

yes, then prepare to see things unseen and your mind to be emptied, only to be filled with reawaken thoughts of a time when magic and the spirits mixed with the human race. Then take what you have discovered at an inner level and manifest that awareness on an outer level. Become what your creator intended, a creature of light and magic who flows with the universe.

Every living creature is bound by the law of nature, to seek shelter from the weather, to gather food for nourishment, and to seek the true creator. Every creature has the moral duty to embrace the truth, when found conform life to its principles and precepts. There is more than one path and thus each person must journey to the beat of their own heart. Through the evolution of church dogma and the ingrained fear of the generations of mankind, many things you have known have been forgotten, destroyed and suppressed. Before you decide to become a practitioner of the oldest form of spiritualism, you must look at the history of the craft and its persecutors; understand your choices and why you are making them. Your journey is not

to be undertaken for selfish purposes or to harm others but to glorify creation and that which is humanity. As you explore you will see why you have always been told that going back to an older way of life was evil, against the natural progress of god. You will see how the world evolved as a Christian world, a world against the older and truer craft and the natural order of god. We will show you the process used to make Gods of old the demons of today.

In the following pages, we will review a small portion of Historical data from several sources. We will present you with documents and references for your future studies. Most are from Biblical texts not included in the authorized King James Version, as well as other historical documents. It is recommended that you get a really good book of history and compare it to other historical texts. Ask the simple questions, what was going on during the time? Who was in control of the populace? What were the stakes involved? Who wrote the document and why? You will be amazed at how much this can enlighten you to the

past and workings of the thing called mankind.

I have discovered, as part of any learning experience, one must search for themselves. This book can point you in the right direction, but it cannot formulate your opinion. Open your mind and explore anything you find suspect. Knowledge is the greatest gift of our creator. With knowledge we can accomplish anything. Only the Christians would say with Faith we can move mountains, when in fact knowledge has moved mountains.

Always remember history will be twisted and written to the best light of the writer and the ruling body. So when reading historical works, look at the times they were written, the people they were about and the author who wrote them. Compare as many other texts and written documents that you can find of the same time from different cultures. Look at translations and who did it. Evidence shows that History is constantly rewritten to the best view of the writer. Archeologist and those that translate old texts have generally rewritten history based on what they know at the times. We will show you some major

events and a brief note on what history states occurred. After reading this, use common judgments and you will see what has taking place and why the practitioner was forced to hide and give up their culture and life. We will put things before you and let you draw your own conclusion.

In viewing just a brief overview of history and using mostly Biblical text and early writings of European Statesmen, I'm sure your evaluation will be one where the Practitioner, Witchcraft, and or The Craft has been slandered and misunderstood by many for centuries. I think your logical concussion will be the term Witchcraft itself is not proper or has been defined unjustly by those not practicing. Christianity is the creator of the witch. In fact they are merely practitioners of the old ways. The Secrets taught to mankind by the ancients. You can call them angels, demons, and even extra terrestrials. This is entirely up to you to draw the logical conclusions. It may be your conclusion that the ancient powers lays within all of us and you just might decide that yours has been rekindled.

It is said that the creation of the world was a mere thought of the God(s). Yes, the actual translation was literally Gods. Biblically, creation took seven days and consisted of only the thought of God. Isn't it amazing! Just a simple blink or a partial thought and the universe and all forms of life were created. It is believed that upon this creation, The Gods seeded a creature called mankind and all the animals and plants. Again between the craft and Biblically there is no dispute. It is stated that when they looked at their creation, the gods were filled with wonder and thrilled with their deeds.

Here we shall swerve on another path and state "with each created being they had placed a seed, a spark of themselves". Biblically, there seems to be no contradiction, since the sparks are defined as a soul, whereas; in the true ancient sect, the spark is an innate part of the essence of the creator. Many cultures recognize this and call it many things. In Christian based cultures it is called the soul. In the pagan communities it is the essence or termed based on traditions.

In the scientific community, this spark cannot be explained. In the evolution theory, something occurred many years ago that caused an evolutionary chain reaction that created mankind and all things. This would appear to be quite unrealistic since there are so many different species of living creatures as well as plants. This is explained by the interactions and climate. There is also the question of why Homo sapiens were the only one to be deemed sentient and placed above all other life forces. The concepts of right and wrong then must be taken out of the equation; humans can do as they wish because there is nothing after the body expires. The only consequences that come from his actions are metered by man and thus, only the strong survive.

As we can see, this theory has as many flaws as the Christian theory. It does not explain all the elements of the soul and the energies and essence of that which is after this existence which have been time and time again proven to exist.

The unanswered question, where is man's soul and why did this creature become sentient and

more advanced than other creatures. Why does this human creature seem to have a deeper sense of right and wrong than other beings on the same planet? We can explain the workings and mechanics of a person, but not this spark of creation with its enormous power. Science cannot also explain why different people seem to have such extraordinary and varied gifts.

In our enlightenment, we shall accept the soul of man as well as his first creation and reproduction system of mankind fashioned by a supreme power, or in this case Gods and Goddesses of creation. It is written in the ancient texts, that when the Gods saw the complexities of man and the power they had given them, they communed with them and watched them, fearing they would rise to the power of gods themselves. With this power they could over throw the Gods and invade Heavens. In the Bible this eulogy was written as Eve in the Garden of Eden, taking a bite of a fruit and being cast from the garden. As we investigate other cultures, similar aspect and myths arise.

Here lies the myth of creation of the first people, the Wicca or wise one. Nowhere does anyone tell of the race before Adam, or of those that lived with the Creator in his dwellings. We will see many places about beings called Angels. But again their creation is a total mystery. Some even lay claim to superior races from other planets seeding the earth. To this theory, we can never dispute, because superior beings to the masses are always going to be classified as Gods. In most cultures, they do place their heaven in the sky somewhere, and thus it can be plausible.

Wicca is an earth religion based on the pre-Christian traditions of England, Ireland, Scotland, and Wales. It is true that this religious belief system is as old as time and rooted in the Pagan traditions. Pagan origins can be traced even further back to Paleolithic peoples who worshipped the Hunter God and a Fertility Goddess.

Cave paintings found in France depict a man with the head of a stag, and a woman who is pregnant. They stand in a circle with eleven beings. The circle is representative of the one and

the eleven creative forces, with man and woman, the thirteen powers. This is the ancient ways and still practiced today as it was in days of old by select secret groups. Its symbolisms and rites have been integrated into the Christian faith as a form of conversion to Christianity. Any student of theology will tell you that modern Christianity has changed very drastically from its inception. Christianity changed to meet the needs of those in power and defile that which is different. As any conquering army, those in Christianity began destroying that which represented anything other than their own system.

The word Wicca is a noun according to Merriam-Webster Dictionary. It is derived from Old English. It was first placed in the dictionary by linguists in 1959, about the same time it was becoming a legal religion in the United States. This specific tradition of Paganism become popular at the turn of the century and fought a long battle to be recognized as one of the religions of the world.

A Look at the word witch reveals that it too comes from Middle and Old English. Middle

English “wicche” and Old English “wicca, masculine and wicce, or feminine. Another form of the word “weg” possibly is much older having its origins in Indo-European roots. We can see this in Thailand and Oriental cultures, where the belief in Holly Mothers is equal with the Mother Earth in Wicca. The word witch will date many centuries before the twelfth century. Witch can also be mathematically written as $x^2y = 4a^2(2a - y)$. This equation was created by Maria Gaetana Agnesi, an Italian mathematician prior to her death in 1799 and was the translation of Italian versiera cubic curve (influenced by Italian versiera female demon). So we can see by a brief look into the word that Witches have been around for a long time and the belief in their power caused the inventions of many things and the development of modern science. We can also see that this word became a seed word of fear by Christians who wanted to convert a world.

History dictates that it was not until the beginning of the Middle Ages that the common belief that witches and pagans have an evil nature.

It is also the same time that the Christian Church began to spread and become the self called “moral and only one” religion of the world. In many cases stealing what was an older law of morality and the code that belonged to those that called themselves pagans. One example that comes to the forefront is the Codes of Hammurabi, a pagan king of Babylon around 1760 BC who worshiped the God Marduk, God of Fifty names. His code of morality and Justice would be a standard model for the governmental laws of all nations. Another example can be found in the Egyptian Book of The dead, a text that contains what Christians call the Ten Commandments, but are dated thousands of years before Christianity.

A look at the word Pagan will reveals even more. It is derived from the Latin *pagus*, whence *pagani* meaning those who live in the country. It was a name given to the country folk who remained with their natural faiths after the cities had become populated with Christians. Various forms of Paganism are described in special articles (Brahmanism, Buddhism, and Mithraism); so we

will not go into length about this. Pagan is defined by modern terms as any religious practice that has more than one deity. In essence the Catholic churches are Pagans because they have a trinity but they deny this. It does seem clear, the label evil pagan or witch is a Christian invention to undermine the natural religion of country folk and those wishing to continue in their own belief systems.

In the nature religion, conversion is done by love and understanding and a commitment to the Powers of creation, both natural and supernatural. Pagans never recruit but are sought out by those who want to learn the natural religion and follow the path that is magic.

Practice of The Ancient Ways or Witchcraft is not a series of precepts or beliefs, but rather a way of life and a hierarchy of duties to self and to the beings of lights that made us. Pythagoras (500 B.C.), the first man to call himself a philosopher or lover of wisdom also saw the witch or wise ones as a creature of ancient light and he sought to be close to them. They were a people who put

wisdom, knowledge, and exploration above all things. Through meditations, herbs, and magical stones a practitioner is able to see that which is unseen. Touch that which is unreachable and be as one with nature, life, and the spirits. A practitioner can look at the great web of life and hopefully find those things of destiny that will be pleasant or at the least, avoid the fatal blows life throws to all beings. By living the life we were created to live, as the Ancient spirits or angels taught us to live, we become closer to that oneness with all things that exist. Our third eye is open and the light inside beams brighter. Bright and true, Just like it did when we were created. In the time when our Gods gave us the eternal spark of life and that tiny portion of them to have for all eternity.

For two thousand years the image of the practitioner or Witch has been associated with evil, heathenism, and blasphemy. These concepts have their origin in the foundations of the Christian Church Only. Many other cultures consider the practitioner a Holy and blessed individual and they are revered in the villages as guardians of the

knowledge and healers. When looking at Christianity through the records that exist of the Roman Empire and others, they were the heretics and evil beings who could not accept the true way of the people. After all Jesus was crucified for the crime of heresy. Nonetheless, by making the Witch into a diabolical character of ill intent and action, the Christians were able to attach fear to a word that had once meant Healer, Wise One, and Seer.

Not many people of that time had ever met a witch so it was easy for the Christians to ingrain that fear. It was easier to convert with fear than to convert with truth. Make the simple people think their ways were wrong. Scare them with a vengeful god and a burning hell. With the promise of streets of Gold, Lands of Milk and Honey to a starving and poor population had much sway. History appears to support this. It can also be inferred that this was not the teachings of the Christian, Jesus. As we research and discover the roots of Christianity through their own writings, this point will stand on its own merits and become prominent.

In studying the ancient arts, as in Christianity and other religions, there are many traditions or sects. Some are pious and good while others are corrupt with the intents of man. In your investigation of the truth you will discover that there is a definite order of things. A Hierarchy that must be followed to be totally successful no matter what path you choose. You will also discover that God don't corrupt, man does. In this great journey, if you come across any organization that states they are the only one and the only way, run!

There is no such thing as a solitary witch even though we all begin our journey alone. The solitary practitioner is simply an explorer until they are welcomed into the fold or practicing groups. In the craft of the wise, all persons have specific talents. Of these twelve powers, we too must be a part of the whole in order to survive and grow. The combination of elements and direction is essential for the success of many spells and cannot be accomplished by one. As people explore and evolve, they discover new things, they attain new knowledge, they evolve as their creator

intended with one of the twelve powers of creation.

Some are masters of stones, some of herbs, while some have the power of spirits and the universe. Some discover that they have taken their calling from a different older pre-Christian religion or ethnic background (e.g. Celtic, Greek, Norse, and Egyptian). Even before the calling comes some seek comfort and instruction in the works of some modern Witch scholars (e.g. Alister Crowley, Gerald Gardner, Budapest, Alex Sanders, Raymond Buckland, Robert Graves, and even Anton Levy); or by seeking within themselves for inspiration and direction.

Sometimes the god or goddess directs a person to take a different path or guides them in the ways of the Angels and Old Ones. In each person there is the power to do what he/she wills. To follow their evolutionary process to the place that makes them comfortable. Knowing all the time the path leads us all to the same place, the beginning and arms of a loving creator and a new essence of light and energy.

Through the meditations and practices we discover our sphere of existence and the talents we have been given. This is where we will start our journey. At that point we must seek out our leaders and become one with that sphere of life, until the evolutionary process moves us to a higher sphere of life, closer to our creator. Hopefully reading this book and following its practices, you too will find your sphere of life and gain a whole new spiritual life.

There are many paths you will see going on your journey of spiritual growth. It's a fact that most people today started their spiritual life in Christianity because of their common ancestry.

Historians and Theologians agree there is much to learn by studying our past and being conscious observers of life. Most of the religions and myths tell us the stories and trials of our species. Through myth and legend we learn of our culture and its rituals. By listening to its poetry and song, through love and living in harmony with the Universe we discover the great mysteries that are our existence.

The Practice of the Craft has evolved over centuries. From the time of the magical beings communing with the first ones living as one with the gods, continuing to the days of dragons and sorcerers and progressing as history evolved. Surely you didn't believe that the myth of dragons was based on an over grown salamander or the dinosaurs. Perhaps Mermaids are fish with very sexy heads and good scales. You will discover that many myths were actually based on facts and like the ancient sects of the first people were either made extinct or hidden to protect them from further persecution. The craft continued into the time of Adam and through the horrors of war and persecution in the middle Ages. With the witch trials and the emergence of Christianity, the craft declined and was almost led to extinction.

Many rituals and practices of the ancients have been lost or hidden. Some have been resurfacing in modern times. With recent archeological and meditative discoveries, the evidence is awakening the inner self of our species. The early practitioners passed their

knowledge through verbal record and painting on rocks and cave walls to keep their craft alive. We are now able to see and read their wisdom and rites and start to become whole again.

When a practitioner of the early days discovered a new herb of healing, or a way to communicate more effectively with their deity, they passed this on to their son or daughter. These passing's are always done to maintain balance in nature and the universe. Unlike the traditional belief that a mother would pass to her daughter, each passing would be done from one sex to the opposite sex to maintain the balance that is nature, a female would pass to a male and visa versa.

During these times of wisdom and closeness to the creator, the people separated into groups because of fear or differences. They became warring tribes. All the inhabitants were creations of the gods; the gods did not feel compelled to intervene. The Creators agreed to play no favoritism and just sit back to watch the outcome, much like it is today.

The first Practitioners went into hiding

because they were not an aggressive people. They did not care to see the destructive forces of war and the slaughter of man against man. Being the first people who had not strayed from the light of the creators, they followed the ways of the Gods and Goddesses of creation and did not wish to challenge the ways of creation. They parted this realm and went into one of the many spheres or heavens. We can see this in Biblical Text.

In Deuteronomy 10:14 "Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens [is] the LORD'S thy God, the earth [also], with all that therein [is]. Again, 1 Kings 8:27 But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have built? These scriptures show that there is more than one heaven. The phrase "the heaven and the heaven of heavens" can be explained to mean that there are at least three heavens. Indeed, this is what the apostle Paul stated in 2 Cor. 12:2, since he referred to the "third" heaven. It will be our position that most early practitioners went into one of these other

spheres of existences, or heavens.

We can also see evidence of this race of beings in Jeremiah Chapter Four. Jeremiah is shown the Earth, "I beheld or saw the Earth" when God first formed it but before there was even light (Genesis. 1:2). This first race had elders, the wisest of the land and the Angels of God or the Creator. It was decided by the elders, that it was easier for them to go the way of the shadows than to attempt to change the large population or request intervention of the creators. After all, the creator had given them so much to be grateful for and had taken a hands off approach to the ignorance of mankind. They noticed that the practitioners were fading into the shadows and distancing them from the wars of man.

Witches or Practitioners today are going through a time of awakening and regaining their way of life. The old knowledge is emerging into the world again for those who seek it. I tell people who ask me about the time of Awakening in all of us. We know there is a change brewing in our essence and some choose to ignore it while others

grasp it. When this time comes, all we have to do is grasp it and we will attain a heightened spiritual awareness. I am not saying you will have the Power to wave your hands and have things magically appear. But we will know the truth of our being and how to chance things in our life to make it more positive and clean. We will reach out to touch our creator with perfect love and perfect trust.

Many things are still not known about the first organized group of practitioners after the first ones moved to the realm of shadows. There are disputes and debates as to what came first, first civilized man disappearing or the cavemen. Perhaps the creators forced most of mankind to devolve into the prehistoric beings of history or maybe they all went to Atlantis or some realm and still exist today awaiting a time when man discovers their secret hiding place.

It is my resolve as well as the thoughts of many that the first practicing covens of our time were among the prehistoric cave people. Beings of the supernatural guided them along their way to

advance into beings of today. Just like opening a portal between worlds, these firsts came back periodically in the form of Gods and spirits to aide and teach their devolved brothers.

These people used magic as taught by these beings and wayward humans of the first creation. We know this because of the sympathetic magic found on cave paintings and the herbal artifacts that have been found in graves by archeologists. It can also be assumed that their memories of the first days caused them to want to develop. Perhaps some remembered distant memories of being as those teachers, the spirits of light. But the primitives were still young and inexperienced; their devolution caused them many problems. They became a race of people with elementary knowledge and communication skills. We can also conclude that this art and use of magic evolved as the primitives evolved.

On the other hand, biblical teachings tell us after the formation of the world, man was created. God called the first male Adam. From Adam he created the first woman because Adam was lonely.

They were then placed in Paradise, they ate of the fruit of the knowledge tree from which they were told not to, and therefore cast forth as exiles into our earth. Nothing is said at that point about any being left behind in paradise other than the angels was left to guard it from their reentry. There is also not mentioned of any other thing about creatures in the garden. This theory leaves too much to question.

What happened to the animals of the garden? Could it be that god's creation was for sole gratification of god? Did god feel sensory deprivation without man and his creation? Is there actually a concept of god without someone to worship him? There is also the paradox, Why would God create a snake to tempt Eve in the first place? If childbirth was her penitence, why were the animals also punished for the acts of Eve? They also give birth and have menstrual cycles, which is allegedly the curse attributed to woman after her transgression with the snake. This theory still does not explain where these beings called Angels came from.

There is no passage in Biblical text that goes past the creation of heaven and earth, land and sea, flora and fauna, man and animals and then God rested. These are his things we must think about in looking at our position in the grand scheme of life. Have we been forced to live a lie based on inconsistencies and dogma of the ages? Has our ancestors forced us away from the true creator and led us down this path through socialization and the absolute fear of death and the uncertain afterlife? Have borders been placed in countries to distinguish and make those in power feel more evolved than the rest

The Bible states that Adam and Eve gave birth to two sons shortly after they were cast out of the garden. The first two were named Cain and Abel. Cain killed his brother Abel out of anger and jealousy. It states that Cain was banished to the land of Nod where he met his wife. So do we take it that in the land of Nod, a civilization was already flourishing? Who created this civilization? After all the creation mythos only gives Adam and Eve and their first two sons. Cain and Able would

make four. What of this concept of jealousy, how did it evolve? In order for there to be jealousy, it would appear that other things had to exist that someone wanted. It's strange that in four people one would have a jealous feeling. For this we need to look into other parts not placed into the Bible.

The Book of Jubilees is one of those documents that chronicle the life of Adam and supplies us more information than that found in the book of Genesis. The Book of Jubilees was written in Hebrew by a Pharisee between the year of the accession of Hyrcanus to the high priesthood in 135 BC and his breach with the Pharisees some years before his death in 105 B.C. Why did the early elders of the church rewrite it? Perhaps it was not good that the records indicated that Cain was married to his sister Awan or that Seth took his sister, Azura. This would not follow the known Christian law of the middle ages nor would it go well with Judaic doctrine. Perhaps they intended to cover the widespread practice of inbreeding for the first thousand or so years of their creation. This could account for the Neanderthal state and the

degradation of civilization. It is common knowledge that birth defects arise when members of the same close family have off-spring.

After Abel's death, Adam and Eve had many more sons. Out of the Union of Cain and his sister came the great Practitioner Enoch. Cain built the first city and named it for this son. Adam's Son, Seth had a son named Enos. Enos married Naom, his sister, and they give birth to a son, Kenan. Kenan took Mualeleth his sister to be his wife, and she conceives him a son, Mahalalel.

Mahalalel would be the first not to marry inside his immediate family. He marries Dinah, the daughter of Barakiel who is the daughter of his father's brother (first cousins). Here is where it gets interesting. They had a son, Jared and god sent his angels to teach man the secrets of all things. These beings are called Watchers.

In the Christin community today, some were converted to demons while others remained angels. Two of these special watchers were called The Irin or Holy Watchers. They are Twin angels residing in the sixth heaven. The Irin, together with

the twin Qaddisin, constitute the supreme judgment council of the heavenly court. They are among the eight exalted hierarchs that enjoy a rank superior to that of Metatron, who is considered of the greatest angels serving God. According to what is stated in the book of Daniel, Chapter 4:17, the Irin are watchers. It is said that "each of the Irin is equal to the rest of the angels and princes together."

One was assigned to Jared who had taken himself a wife, and her name was Baraka, the daughter of Rasujal, another daughter of his uncle. They give birth to Enoch. Enoch became the first record keeper of the secrets and wisdom of the ancients. It is stated that "he was the first among men that are born on earth as opposed to created by God, who learnt writing and knowledge and wisdom and who wrote down the signs of heaven according to the order of their months in a book, that men might know the seasons of the years according to the order of their separate months."

He was the first to write a testimony and to testify to the sons of God among the generations of the earth, and recounted the weeks of the months of

the jubilees. Enoch made known to them the days of the years, and set in order the months and recounted the Sabbaths of the years as they were made known to him. Enoch was the first seer of this new age of man. He saw in a dream, as it will happen to the children of men throughout their generations until the Day of Judgment; he saw and understood everything, and wrote his testimony, and placed the testimony on earth for all the children of men to read and see and for their generations. Enoch was also the first recorded double marriage, he married another woman whose name was Edna. Other sources will confirm this story of angels and man.

From the Book of Ysreal, it states that when the angels started teaching men, they fell in love and lusted for the daughters of man. One Angel, Shemhazai was the father of two monstrous sons named Hiwa and Hiya, each of whom daily ate a thousand camels, a thousand horses and a thousand oxen. When their supply of food was short, the creator had to create manna for them so they did not feast on the lower men of the earth.

Azael invented the ornaments and cosmetics employed by women to lead men astray (showing the progressive evil woman syndrome of Christianity). It was not his intent to cause women to lead men astray, merely to accentuate the beauty that was already there. Because of the end result and the domination of man to his mate, Azael was later converted to a demon because of his aide to females.

Enoch lived and studied with the angels of God as his Father had. The angels showed him everything which is on earth and in the heavens, the rule of the sun, and he wrote down everything in a Book of Shadows and Ways. Enoch testified against the angels and men who had sinned to the Watchers. And he was taken to a special place away from the children of men, and the spirits of the creator took him into the Garden of Eden in majesty and honor. In the Garden of Eden he writes down the condemnation and judgment of the world that the creator had decreed. He wrote all the wickedness of the children of men with the Angels or Sons of God. He placed all this in a holy shrine

of the creator for future generations and to remind man that their days were indeed numbered unless they came back to the old ways. In his writings it is said that man was given Five Thousand-Five Hundred years to make amends with their creator. From the marriage of Enoch and Edna came the oldest known human of biblical history, Methuselah who carried the traditions of his father.

Because of all the actions of the angels and man, (God) tell him of the flood he would place on man that would cover the land of the world. This was his way of letting the children of men know that he would recount all the deeds of the generations until the day of condemnation. Methuselah would be his record keeper so he burnt the incense of the sanctuary, a sweet spice acceptable before the Lord on the Mount. From record we are sure that this incense was jasmine or Sandalwood. It is then related that the Lord God has four places on the earth, the Garden of Eden, the Mount of the East, Mount Sinai, and Mount Zion (which) will be sanctified in the new creation for a sanctification of the earth.

Methuselah marries for the second time, Edna the daughter of Azrial, his first Cousin and the daughter of his father's brother. He is the Eighth generation after creation. He and his wife give birth to Lamech.

Lamech marries Betenos, the daughter of Baraki'il, the daughter of his father's brother and also his first cousin. Betenos was the mother of Noah. At his birth she called him Noah, saying, 'This one will comfort me for my trouble and all my work, and for the ground which the lord has cursed.'"

It is stated that the human race had become massive and covering much of the known land. The Bible says that the people had grown wicked and godless. They mated with their Guardians and had begun to aspire to be Gods themselves. The angels who still resided with the creator petitioned god to go to the earth and prove men's wickedness and aspirations to become gods themselves. The angels felt that men had taken advantage of the creators love and wanted them punished. God granted the plea of the angels knowing that they would find a

race very ungrateful to the creator's gifts.

The angels descended and had many problems. "But when, having assumed these forms of the things of the earth, they convicted as covetous those who stole them, and changed themselves into the nature of men, in order that, living holily, and showing the possibility of so living, they might subject the ungrateful to punishment, yet having become in all respects men, they also partook of human lust, and being brought tinder its subjection they fell into cohabitation with women themselves; and being involved with them, and sunk in defilement and altogether emptied of their first power, were unable to turn back to the first purity of their proper nature, their members turned away from their fiery substance: for the fire itself, being extinguished by the weight of lust, and changed into flesh, they walked the impious path downward. For they themselves, being fettered with the bonds of flesh, were constrained and strongly bound; wherefore they have no more been able to ascend into the heavens and were thus the Fallen from the creators Grace. Not being able to

reclaim their form they were forced to inhabit the things which they possessed on this earthly plane.

Now the stones of the earth and the trees will be given power of the angels who resided in them to aid the practitioner. Biblically it was written, "For after the intercourse, being asked to show what they were before, and being no longer able to do so, on account of their being unable to do aught else after their defilement, yet wishing to please their mistresses, instead of themselves, they showed the bowel (marrow) of the earth; Which translates to, the choice metals, [flowers of metal] gold, brass, silver, iron, and the like, with all the most precious stones. And along with these charmed stones, they delivered the arts of the things pertaining to each, and imparted the discovery of magic, and taught astronomy, and the powers of roots, and whatever was impossible to be found out by the human mind; also the seeking of gold and silver, and the like, and the various dyeing of garments. And all things, in short, which are for the adornment and delight of women, are the discoveries of these demons bound in flesh.

Ironical how the angels are now called demons of the flesh.

Here we will impart to you the wisdom of the ancients and your heritage. You are decedents of these great and powerful beings. There is no missing link. The mythos of Adam and Eve being the first ones in a lie and all things that came from the creator and these beings are here today for your use. We only need to look at the Christian Commandment, "Thou shalt have no other Gods before you", to show there indeed did exist others. If they didn't exist then there would be no need for the commandment. But history goes forward to become our present and teachers and the ravings of lunatics seem to have been our real heritage as far as religion.

In the Christian belief, the next great thing would be the flood of Noah. It is described as a huge rain of forty days and night to cover the entire earth. Once Noah lands and began civilization again, the world was fresh and new. We can really look at this with suspicion. Have you ever seen the land after a flood? We must deduce that those

surviving the flood that had mixed with the creatures called angels had developed different characteristics, thus the legends of the water creatures. We can also see that these creatures would have the genetic make-up more so of the angels and therefore be longer lived if not immortal.

The lands now known as India, America, and Egypt could not have been affected by the great flood, because their history is continuous. In Addition, to believe that the world was populated by only those on the Ark is impossible. If a woman's childbearing years are from age 16 to 40 and she has a child every two years, she can give birth to twelve children, twenty-four if she gave birth to twins each time which is also highly unlikely. If there is plenty of food and few diseases, then most of these children will grow up to have children themselves. On average, six of these twelve children will be girls and grow up to be mothers.

With each mother producing six more mothers a generation, eight people can reproduce

into twenty-five million in about eight thousand years. Especially since from conception to birth is nine months and conditions may not have been ideal after the flood. Without assistance from other races this may have taken considerably longer. There are also the problems of inbreeding and some babies being born with defects. With the theory of others existing and joining with the Ark inhabitants, would follow biblical text more logically. It would also follow the archeologist theories and discoveries of past civilizations. Especially those speculations and theories stating, "Modern humans are hybrids of angels and humans." Angels being immortal beings of the creator, their children would also inherit these traits. One can also rely on other biblical texts and historical documents of other cultures to see that others did survive. It is possible also in theory that the flood only covered a portion of the globe as science of today suggests.

One of these texts, The Book of Jubilee tells us a different and more detailed story. The Book of Jubilee states, "Since, therefore, the souls of the

deceased giants were greater than human souls, inasmuch as they also excelled their bodies, they, as being a new race, were called also by a new name. And to those who survived in the world a law was prescribed of God through an angel, how they should live". Thusly God placed certain laws on their continued survival. God even took away their immortality.

The survivors of the flood were considered a bastard race, of the fire (lust) of angels and the blood of women, and they had what were considered ungodly desires. God sent an angel declaring to them His will, and saying:- These things seem good to the all-seeing God, that you are lord over no man; that you trouble no one, unless any one of his own accord subject himself to you, worshipping you, and sacrificing and pouring libations, and partaking of your table, or accomplishing aught else that they ought not, or shedding blood, or tasting dead flesh, or filling themselves with that which is torn of beasts, or that which is cut, or that which is strangled, or aught else that is unclean".

This clearly shows that these beings were more than man. God also gives them permission so man may worship them. It also clearly stated that God gave only those that came freely to them should be subjected to them. This new race agreed to the terms.

Others say that Shemhazai and Azael were seduced by the demoness Naamah Agrat, daughter of Mahlat and Lilith who had been Adam's first spouse. Unlike Eve, Lilith is most well-known as the demoness/goddess who was the first woman, created by god at the same time as Adam, unlike Eve who was created from Adam's rib. Lilith refused to submit to Adam's will and left the Garden of Eden and was subsequently cursed by god for her desertion of Adam. According to most scholars of biblical text, this tale is "evidence" that she was originally a goddess or at the very least an aspect of the great goddess and was demonized for being an independent female. This caused a rift to form between the newly formed race and the sons of angels (demons). This is partly responsible for many Greek and Roman mythologies and the Gods

dealing with men in destructive forces. It is also seen throughout many other civilizations, this was a developing time for many Myths and legends as well as the one god theories.

This leads us back to Noah and after the flood. Noah's sons take their families out of the ark after the waters subsided. Noah divided the earth into three parts and gave those parts to his sons according to the bible. I would think that was very presumptions of Noah but nevertheless, it is written thusly and we have no record to dispute it. Shem occupied the East and had what is called all the children of Eber. Japhet occupied the lands to the West, which are called the Isles of the Gentiles (England and Europe) and Ham all other portions of the world. It appears from the texts, Ham's children built the major cities of the Middle East and the Fertile Crescent Area, including up and down the Nile Valley.

It is written, the decedents of Noah had made contact with the existing tribes and wars over borders began. This again is evidence that the flood did not wipe out all humanity. Religious

Philosophy changed as the people felt oppressed by the priests overbearing attitude towards the way they should live. There was no freedom as before the flood and the sons of Angels called to men. War again came in the different sectors of society and in the lands. During this time it is recorded, people returned to the old ways they once had lived. People wanted to recapture the magic and glory that their ancestors had before the time of regression. They called to the ancients for guidance but only a few appeared. But those that did taught men all the pleasures of the angels and the magic of the ancients. Once again mankind was cast into the worship of the different spirits Deities, or angels, demons and spirits of the older world. Some attempted to reclaim their powers that god had sparked in the first man, and others ceded to participate in the worship of the flesh and those creatures that were above man. Then enters the religious figure Abram (Abraham).

The religious figure known as Abraham (Abram) comes from the lineage of Shem. Abraham, whose father was Thara, was born in the one

thousand and seventeenth year after the flood. Civilization had excelled and the world had become very populated once more. His dwelling-place was at first in the country of the Chaldaeans, where the people worshipped the gods in many forms and golden idols were abundant. New trade routes were in existence and exploration thrived. The people of the neighboring villages and cities passed on their culture and mystical ways to the tribes of Abraham. Abraham was losing control that he claimed to be God ordained.

According to Apocalypse of Abraham, another religious text not placed in the Bible, It is stated that Abram could read and write at an early age. He began to understand the errors of the people of earth and the desires of the creator. Abraham sees that mankind had gone astray again as in the time before the flood. They had made graven images and chased after those things he considered unclean. The Bible says, God appears to him in a great cloud and tells him to separate himself from his people and he would make his family great among all men. Abram knew the law

of his tribe and he separated himself from his father, that he might not worship idols with him. He began to pray to his God that He might be saved from the errors of the children of men, and that his portion should not fall into error after uncleanness and vileness. He watched over his flock and that which he had planted. When the time came for the sowing of seed upon the land, they all went forth together to protect their seed against the ravens, (in this context, the author believes that ravens are a word for the Angel Azazel, which is mentioned at length. (Apocalypse of Abraham, 13:4-9 as well as Genesis 15:11) and Abram went forth with those that went, and the child (Abram) was a lad of fourteen years. This places an age on this Biblical figure and definitely shows that these other books were following a chronological order.

Abram marries the maiden Sarai. He becomes enraged because of the idol worship and the ways of the people. He gets up in the middle of the night and burns the “House of Idols” which causes the death of his brother Haran. He is ridden with guilt so he resides there and meditates the

course of his life and from that point tells his father he will be leaving for the land of Caanan as directed by God. Through the Book of Abraham the moral values of good and evil seem to prevail and become more confusing. Here we truly find a paradox of the Christian religion. Abram burns the property of others and kills his brother, yet he is to be blessed by God.

One problem is the good and evil theory itself. Do we know good without evil? Good and Evil being very subjective concepts and not those of the Pagan religion. This is always viewed as a grey area based on individual circumstances. Is there something like an objective evil and good? If not then what is evil? We often use the words good and evil but what do we really mean? For most people good seems to mean "something I would like to have or something I would like to happen" and evil "something I wouldn't want to happen to me, but wish on others who are not friends to me". We haven't found anything like an objective evil or good and therefore evil and good are subjective in their very nature. Evil and Good are mere illusions

but that doesn't mean they do not exist. It's just that evil is evil and good is good because people see it as that. Something that is evil for one person doesn't have to be evil for another one. We can say the same with the concept of Good. Is good the things Gods do or is God doing the things that are good? In the first case there is no objective existence of good since it would all be from God's point of view. In the second case goodness exist separate from God and therefore God isn't needed for moral values of man. But Abraham thought different; he looked to God for all guidance until it conflicted with his own needs. Form a subjective view, it can therefore be said that Abraham lived a good and moral life.

The Book of Jubilee states "Abram journeyed and he took Sarai, his wife, and Lot, his brother Haran's son, to the land of Canaan, and he came into Asshur, and proceeded to Shechem. While there he dwelt near a lofty oak. And he saw, and, behold, the land was very pleasant from the entering of Hamath to the lofty oak. And God said to him: 'To thee and to thy seed will I give this

land.' And he built an altar there, and he offered thereon a burnt sacrifice to the Lord, who had appeared to him. And he removed from thence unto the mountain Bethel on the west and Ai on the east, and pitched his tent there. And he saw and behold, the land was very wide and good, and everything grew thereon -vines and figs and pomegranates, oaks and ilexes, and terabits and oil trees, and cedars and cypresses and date trees, and all trees of the field, and there was water on the mountains. And he blessed the Lord who had led him out of Ur of the Chaldees, and had brought him to this land. Abraham then becomes king and pharaoh of the land. Abraham makes his laws for his kingdom based on the established laws of the religious leaders in the time of Noah and what he felt his God had decreed. It can be inferred at this point these laws would have been an accumulation of those throughout the ages and influenced by those who made them. All written on scrolls or some form of materials that would keep a record of the rules of man.

Abraham warns his people to follow his

laws and not regress to the ways of the land they had fled from. The people didn't listen to Abraham and they began once again to split into groups and sects. The temples of Abraham would restrict and pass laws against the neighboring city states in an attempt to keep their way of life and justify claiming more lands, but travel and commerce was too much for the time. Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt at the time, descended on Abraham's land with an immense army and seized Sarah the Princess, mother of the nation. And what did Abraham do? Did he avenge the insult by force of arms?

Abraham called his armies together. He had three hundred and eighteen officers under him, with what was called unlimited manpower at his disposal. But this army was no match for the Egyptian armies and he did not want to be defeated and his lands taken. He knew the surrounding populations influence on the original tribes of Abraham was too strong for him to outright win. Abraham could not let his people know that he feared the Egyptian armies so again he passed

laws against those of Egypt and paid the ransom for his wife. He gave Necho many servants to build the pyramid tomb of Necho. He gets his wife back and he is ordered to leave Egypt and the lands forever or be wiped from the earth. Abraham returns home to his lands and his nephew Lot goes to the great City of Sodom to live where he is later taken prisoner by the conquerors of Sodom.

Before Sodom's Biblical divine destruction, Lot seeks shelter in a cave with his two daughters, and becomes obsessed. Slightly ignorant of their incestuous plan, he sires two children who are fated to become the progenitors of Israel's national adversaries, Moab and Ammon. And yet despite Lot's degradation, a divine spark remains hidden, to be rekindled many generations later in the person of Ruth the Moabitess, who counts King David (born approx... 1040 B.C.E) as her most fabled descendant. Abraham being now old has lost control over his people. Most of the people had developed into smaller villages with their own separate governmental systems and religious practices.

Abraham wife gave birth to a son, Issac when Abraham was one hundred years old. Before Abraham dies he gives control of his sect to Isaac. Isaac attempts to keep his fathers wishes alive but here we can see that there is a definite rise in the old ways. When Abraham hands the leadership over to Isaac, the Bible states that God spoke to him saying, "Do not descend to Egypt, live in the land that I will indicate or show to you, stay in this land and I will be with you and bless you; for to you and your offspring will I give all these lands, and establish the oath that I swore to Abraham your father: I will increase your offspring like the stars of the heavens; and will give to your offspring all these lands; and all the nations of the earth shall bless themselves by your offspring. Because Abraham obeyed my voice, observed my safeguards, my commandments, my decrees, and my Torahs." Issac and his wife Rebekah, a Syrian, have two sons, Esau (Edom) and Jacob.

Esau also called Edom, had several wives. He was married to Adah daughter of Elon the Hittite, Oholibamah daughter of Anah the Hivite,

and Basemath, Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebaioth. Adah gave birth to his child Eliphaz; Basemath gave birth to Reuel; and Oholibamah gives birth to Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. These sons were born in the land of Canaan. Shortly after their birth, he leaves Canaan with his family because of the family rift that had developed with Jacob. He moved to the Hill country of Seir. Here he has many more sons. Not much is said of his daughters. Eliphaz son of Adah; Reuel, the son of Basemath. Eliphaz, Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz were all Esau's through his concubine. He also has Adah, Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

Jacob also has many sons; the main one in Biblical History would be Joseph who is sold into slavery by his brothers. It is through this alliance that the Sons of Jacob can overthrow the Sons of Esau. Joseph was a great dream visionary and interrupter and loved by the Pharaoh of Egypt for his gifts. This is the same Joseph of the coat of many colors.

The families become estranged. The Sons of

Esau make war with the Sons of Jacob and they are smitten (defeated and killed). Some are taken captive to Egypt where they are sold into slavery or beheaded. The Children of Esau enlist the People of Seir to accompany them to Egypt to deliver their kinsman. Joseph and his Brethren and the Egyptians slay Six Hundred Thousand. Nearly all the Mighty Men of Seir being slain, they make war with the Children of Esau to drive them from their Land. Esau prevails and utterly annihilates the Children of Seir. All this allegedly don't in the name of a benevolent God.

Out of the tribes of Isaac comes the legend and great leader Moses, who was the so called deliver of the people from Egypt. However recent discoveries have plainly indicated that the Exodus never happened. It is also been discovered that it was a common method of controlling population by placing infants in baskets and floating them down the Nile, so the story of Moses miraculous survival is quite exaggerated. It is also true that Moses fled Egypt when he killed an Egyptian soldier. He knew that the Pharaoh would punish him for his act. It

did not matter that he was raised by one of Pharaohs daughters. With this one act, Moses had challenged the fact that a Pharaoh was an embodiment of the Gods and therefore he must be punished for his wrong doing. Moses escaped punishment with the help of his royal foster mother and was an outlaw to Egypt. It is rumored in certain circles that Moses was a true Practitioner and wanted only to cause justice among people. He was totally opposed to the Egyptian pantheon of Gods and Goddesses and did not favor the pharaoh being an embodiment of God.

Both Moses and Aaron practiced Egyptian magic, described in detail in Exodus. They turned a stick into a snake (Illusionary Magic), for instance, during a competition with the Egyptian magicians. The plagues visited on the Egyptians, including such things as pestilence and darkness in the middle of the day. This all points out to the practice of magic and the ancient rites. There is also the touching a rock and making water flow and more. Perhaps this can be a reason for Moses wanting to rule and lead the people. Parting the

Red Sea is a total weather witch trick. But this would follow, since he was raised an Egyptian and immersed in the magical rites of Egypt. But Moses was not the first well know magician, nor would he be the last.

In the Old Testament (1 Samuel 28:3–25), Saul, The first King of Israel, the son of Kish of the tribe of Benjamin,(1050-1000BC) became king because of his quest to find his father's strayed Asses. He meets Samuel who is in search of a leader for the tribes because they are disorganized. Saul consulted Samuel the "seer" in the hope of locating the lost animal. Samuel tells Saul they are safe and reveals to him of Samuels mission to unite the tribes and anoints him King. Predetermined Political ploys and making all believe that this scraggly child is indeed the true king of the tribes.

Saul was a weak and ineffective king who didn't do much with his life except try to murder David, his son-in-law, despite David's repeated expression of loyalty. He knew David was destined to take his place one day on the throne. Saul's hatred and insane jealousy for David made

him fail as a king and Samuel regretted anointing him. Saul's reign ended in disaster with the loss of border lands and many lives. He prayed to his god for an answer to the invading forces but received an answer. Saul then visited the witch of Endor for answers. The bible describes Saul as being "afraid and his heart was very much dismayed at the outcome of his rule and the war. And he consulted the Lord, and he answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by priests, nor by prophets" (I Kings, 28). Then he went to Endor, to a woman who had "a divining spirit", and persuaded her to call the soul of Samuel. The woman saw the prophet, and Saul recognized him from the description she gave of him.

It seems strange that Christians had banned this practice many years before this incident. Saul had to travel in disguise to see the famous seer. The first Christians as well as the leader of the day always relied on practitioner's assistance to make their life changing choices. History shows that the Practitioner was feared and therefore shunned when not needed. But this was not always the case.

Even when King Saul began to look for his own interests by marrying his daughter Michal to then Armor bearer, David, the practitioner was still respected and growing in the ancient communities. Only when the practitioner would not do as the king bid or give answers favorable to the King, were there dissatisfaction and laws against them enforced. Saul had asked for poisons for his son-in-law and received them not because the Witch of Endor told him of his fall from power. Saul passed stricter laws blaming it on idol worship and the calling of the spirits which were against the laws of the creator. Not once did he seem to think his fall was because of poor judgment. Take a look at the wars of our past and present, seems like history truly does repeat itself.

David becomes Israel's king after Saul and he is seen to have a different attitude towards the practitioner. David was first to predict a Messiah (Psalm 22). David was said to be a devout man and a favorite of God, he wanted all men to be equal, but equal under the eyes of God not equal in their religious affiliations or in the law of man. He

designed a temple that was considered the greatest in the land. In this temple he would incorporate all faiths, sects, and religious divisions. Solomon, his son finally built the temple. This is where the Practitioner comes to the surface and merges with the Christians. King David imparts seals and methods for breaking the barrier between the seen and unseen world. He seems to have the ancient knowledge of the Old Ones Christians call Angels. He then passes this on to his heir Solomon. As any serious practitioner knows the greatest symbol of protection for the modern practitioner is one of the Seals of David, the five pointed pentagram.

In 1 Kings 1:5, we see that the King David also has conflict when his son Adonijah when he tries to take the throne. But David has made a promise that Solomon shall have the throne. He confides his ancient knowledge to his son-in-law, Solomon and entrusts him with the keys to the royal library. Solomon becomes king in 970 B.C. and begins building a temple as his father requested and with the creator's blessings. He then spends his time writing all the wisdom he gains from his

father David, meditations, and unions he has with the spirit world. This great work is now called "The Keys of Solomon The King", translated by MacGregor Mathers from seven manuscripts on repository at the British Museum.

Solomon restored the ways of the original people with the blessings of the creators. He was given Wisdom and the knowledge of all things. His library was open to all the inhabitants of the earth so they too may learn all the things of the past. In some circles it is considered that his influence over the lands could have made him the same person as Thutmose I of Egypt. We know who David's father was: Jesse the Bethlehemite (I Samuel 16:1). But this Jesse too remains, like Thutmose I's father, "a man of mystery"; his being "of noble birth" stemming from the fact that he was of the royal tribe of Judah. But nevertheless, Solomon becomes King after David. This would indeed be logical since of the rites of Solomon and his upbringing would have a definite Egyptian heritage.

Civilization, Commerce, and Religions

freedom grew under the reign of King Solomon. King Solomon was the wisest man of his generation and maybe the wisest man to ever to have lived. He was a magician as well a great teacher to his people. The book, "The Wisdom of Solomon" was written many years after his death. It is believed much of it is probably based on his words and written records. In this book of wisdom, he said that God gave him power and knowledge. Solomon's studies included the science of Magic and the Occult. In the original text it gave the practitioner secrets for gaining power over demons and angels. The sentence in some modern translations was mistakenly taken as power over the winds, because the two words are similar in the original Hebrew. He also had great knowledge of exorcism and the spirit world. When God revealed unto Solomon that he should build his father's Temple, Solomon assembled all the wisest men, genii and Affrights of the earth, and the mightiest of the devils.

He appointed one division of these supernatural creatures to build, another to cut

blocks and columns from the marble mines, and others to dive into ocean-depths to bring him pearls and coral. It is said that some of the pearls were like ostrich's or hen's eggs. The coral was the richest in color and more precious than gold. So he began to build the Temple of Solomon that had been designed by King David, his father. The devils (demons) cut quarries of jacinth and emerald and made highly polished marble blocks for the floors. Solomon clearly had control of the spirits and the wisdom to not be trapped by them. Under Solomon's rule the empires of the world prospered. The religions of Moses and Abraham declined in growth until the time of the birth of Jesus of Nazareth, the Messiah and man.

Again here the translations of biblical text deceive mankind. As we look at word origins. The word Jesus is the Latin form of the Greek Iesous, this will translate to the Hebrew Jeshua, or Joshua, or again Jehoshua, meaning "Jehovah is salvation". The name Jesus is not that prominent in the Old Testament of the Bible but becomes prominent between the time of Josue, the son of Nun and

Josue, the high priest in the days of Zorobabel.

The word Christ, Christos, Greek and equivalent of the Hebrew word Messias, means "anointed." According to the Laws of the time, priests (Exodus 29:29; Leviticus 4:3), kings (I Kings 10:1; 24:7), and prophets (Isaias 61:1) were supposed to be anointed for their offices; now, the Christ, or the Messiah, combined this threefold dignity in arrival giving them more validity.

The Birth of the Jesus, around 4 B.C., was the real start of the Christian expansion and a new religion. It is said because of the civil unrest in the current religious centers. Jesus was a mere catalyst that brought about the fall of the tax collecting priests. The practitioner would now have a real hostile force to deal with. In Matthew 2, tells us Jesus was born in the days of King Harod. According to Tertullian, an ecclesiastical writer in the second and third centuries, he fixes Jesus birth in the 41st year of Augustus, that is to say, 4 B.C. if he actually existed.

The Church ordained that Christ's Birthday should be December 25th, 0000. But they used this

date to aid in the conversion of the pagans and other religious sects of the older periods. After all this was a special time for the pagans and these older sects also. It is the time of the Winter solstice. It was determined that the use of these pagan holidays would make conversion to Christianity less painful.

Jesus Christ was presented as the Sun of Righteousness (Malachi 4:2) replacing the sun god, Sol Invictus. Later, pagan holidays were reclassified as Christian holidays (holy-days). December 25th was the "Victory of the Sun-God" Festival in the pagan Babylonian world, and a celebration of the Festival of Saturn (Saturnalia), or winter solstice, in the ancient Roman Empire. To all ancient pagan civilizations, this date was the birthday of the gods -- the time of year when the days began to lengthen and man was blessed with a "regeneration of nature." Moreover, all the December 25th' during this period in December and January, they observed the Kalends of January, which represented the triumph of life over death. This whole season was called Dies Natalis Invicti

Solis, the Birthday of the Unconquered Sun. The festival season was marked by much merrymaking.

The Early Christian Leaders knew this would give Christianity an official status. Constantine brought internal peace to the Empire. The pagans flocked into the Catholic places of worship, because they were still able to worship their old gods, only now under different names instead of death which was decreed. It mattered not to them whether they worshiped the Goddess-mother and her Child under the old names (Isis and Horus), or under the names of the "Virgin Mary" and the "Christ-child." Either way, it was the same old idol-religion. In Babylon the Mother Child was Semiramis and Tammuz (BAAL) and in China, Shing Moo, the great Mother.

The pagans of northern Europe celebrated their own winter solstice, known as Yule. Yule was symbolic of the pagan Sun God, Mithras, being born, and was observed on the shortest day of the year. As the Sun God grew and matured, the days became longer and warmer. It was customary to light a candle to encourage Mithras, and the sun,

to reappear next year. Huge Yule logs were burned in honor of the sun.

On the shortest day of December, the Egyptians would bring green palms into their homes. This was to symbolize life's triumph over death. Now this date would become the birth date of the Messiah.

A Messiah had been prophesized for centuries and Jesus was not the first Savior of the poor and disheartened to be in the people's midst. Because of the eclipse and the alignment of the planets, the pagans who followed the stars, believed that this prophecy was different than the others. The usurper of the throne was at hand and the slaves would be freed, not like Moses or John the Baptist. The Kings ordered a second killing of the innocents. The first took place during the time of Moses. Now King Harod must do the same to ensure his rule and the rule of all great leaders of the times. With the slaves believing the words of prophets it was a time of danger. Freedom of the slaves would be the fall of civilization.

In the lives of the common people there was

great poverty and hunger in everyday life. A messiah who promised the people a kingdom where no suffering or pain gave the commoners hope. Their daily function was to obey the wants, wishes, and labor for their masters. As we all know those that have not always want to have. This basic fact may be the real cause to the commandment, "Thou shalt not be covetousness." So the messianic prophecies grew abundant. Each time, new hope sprang.

"Any Day now we will Be Free to do as we choose." The masses would say, "No more hunger or pain, the Messiah has come to deliver us. He will take us to a land of golden streets, flowing with milk and honey"

As a Practitioner of the old ways, we shall always accept the existence of this powerful magician. It is clear that Jesus himself practiced the rites of the people of Judea and considered himself a Jew, living under the laws of Moses and Abraham. It is also clear that he practiced the crafts rituals of the practitioner also. While some call him a fanatic, and a socialist. Most people of

the time referred to him as a rebel, while many call Him a dreamer and a mystic. Josephus merely describes Jesus a member one of the three Jewish sects, the Essene. I do not think there is any debate that Jesus was a peaceful man who loved all things and all God's creation. He has be shunned as a do-gooder and at some points called a magician because of his miraculous works. The Romans hated him mostly because of his stance on taxation and his ideals of freedom from the emperor and servitude to God. It can also be noted that nowhere in any biblical text does Jesus profess to be the Son of God, or even God who walks among mortal men. This is a Christian invention only.

The rulers of the day began to appease the servants by allowing this new fad religion. Then it became dangerous and some even cast aside their culture and beliefs in favor the new faddish Christians. By doing so, their servants would be more faithful and feel akin to their masters. After all to bow to a Christian master, must be the will of God. With this total overbearing attitude of this new cult of Christians, the Witches or Practitioners

were always under severe persecutions. Even though their main prophet, Jesus Christ was said to have been a great magician. The Death of Jesus occurred about 37 A.D. in the consulship of Gemini. It is stated by some that he was thirty-three when he ascended. Court records of the times do not give an exact age when he was tried; they merely list men prosecuted for being a heretic and insurgent against the Roman Empire and never mentioned the name Jesus. Others say he was crucified because he caused slave revolts.

The Jewish historian Josephus, writing for the Roman government in the 70's A.D. records some incidental things regarding Christ and the church. He confirms that John the Baptist died at the hand of Herod as well as the death of, "The brother of Jesus, who was called Christ, whose name was James. He delivered them to be stoned" (Josephus, Antiquities of the Jews, Book XVIII, ch. V, p. 20; Book XX, ch. IX, p. 140). There are also more sources other than the Bible that demonstrate the historical reliability of the text. Josephus, who was probably alive during the time of Christ, is

attesting to the reality of his existence. What this also tells us is that within forty years of Christ's death, the knowledge of who he was widespread enough that Josephus could reference him and expect his readers to know exactly who he was talking about. This was also because the main labor pool was slaves and Christians, again showing that the pagan masters would undoubtedly be considered evil.

When the death of Christ occurred there was great debate about which religious faith should be followed. Would Jesus' crime be a hindrance to the other new Jewish disciples, It can be noted this new sect did not call themselves Christians until after the death of Christ. Jesus was condemned to death for heresy against the King, and therefore makes the growing followers a sect of outlaws. There was also the problem of the conversion process. To convert to the old Judaism there was a long ritual process. If a new religion were formed then simplicity of conversion would be essential. The precept of washing away of the sins and baptism was adopted. Especially since this

practice was being used by the pagans of the coastal areas and those worshipping Poseidon. We must remember where we are, coastal areas and fishing towns.

The word baptism is derived from Greek, bapto, or baptizo, to wash or to immerse. It was decided that the acts of John the Baptist would be followed. To convert, the converter had to attest that he accepted Jesus the Christ as their savior and be baptized. They had to acknowledge that he was the son of the one divinity of Moses. Those that did not would be cast into an everlasting lake of fire or Hell and tormented by demons. After baptism, a meal would ensue. The newly organized Christians would be sent to every known city and convert as many as possible. Usually the conversion came from the poorest sector because those people had nothing to lose. It was easy to promise a kingdom to those who had nothing. Christianity began its sweep across the globe. But then where did this theory of Hell come from?

Once a decision was reached, the six began to gather their followers. The twelve apostles had

gone their separate ways and with so many arguments, only five remained. Paul would begin to write a series of letters and their accounts of Jesus life and how they wanted the new sect to grow. These Apostles went to teach others of this new great event and the messiah who says believe in me and receive a Kingdom, deny Christ and burn in a lake of fire or Hell. Which as a matter of record, Jesus never taught. The very influential, Paul would write letters to the world's major governments and begin the spread what is now the World's Major religion. It was then decided that man's punishment for not converting should be an everlasting Hell, a place of fire and brimstone where demons tortured the burning soul that would never die. It would be submitted to the logical person, a god that loves so much would not sentence those he created to a horrible place.

Hell (Hel) was actually a Goddess of the Norsemen. She is the goddess of the underworld. The place where all Norsemen who did not die in battle went to the afterlife.. In the Israelite's cosmological scheme, Sheol was considered a

physical place somewhere beneath the earth's surface. When the Old Testament was translated into Greek, the cognate Hades was used for translated for Sheol. Hades, however, did not accurately express the Hebrew understanding of damnation and the place for damnation. Hades was understood as more than a place of the dead, but included the notion of life everlasting.

The Sadducees, representing Orthodox Judaism, insisted there was no life-after-death (Matthew 22.23). In regards to hell, there are three Greek words so translated. Hades, as discussed above, Gehenna, and Tartaros. The most used term in the New Testament for Hell is Gehenna. Gehenna was the name of the garbage dump located outside Jerusalem. According to Jewish tradition, Gehenna would be the location of the final judgment, thus a place of punishment. The term Gehennais is used nearly exclusively by Jesus, appearing only one other time in the Bible (James 3.6). The final term for hell is Tartaros. This word is found only in 2 Peter 2.4 and indicates a dungeon-prison for the spirit world.

The work of those that followed Jesus grew and the organizers began to rewrite the laws and precepts of what became modern Christianity. Apostles were recruited and sent to other nations. I give credit to a rich noble Roman citizen who was out of favor with his kind, Paul of Tarsus for this epidemic of Christianity. To the established Judea religion, Christianity was just the followers of Jesus of Nazareth a mere Israelitish sect (airesis) like the Sadducees. Nevertheless; because Christianity was a religion of the poor and uneducated the number of Christians increased and, under the emperor Constantine, they were granted freedom of religion and he joined them to halt a revolt among the slaves. Christianity became the national religion of the State.

Augustus began enacting laws of what he considered a moral nature that were very unpopular with the pagan class. Constantine became emperor after the death of Augustus in 311 A.D. He was not actually the rightful emperor but a soldier defending the Roman Empire on the German (Slavic) front. When Galerius, the eldest

son of Augustus died a violent death, Constantine, leader of the armies of Rome became emperor. Constantine was already in favor of Christians because of the former rulers, Maxentius, son of the Emperor Maximianus Herculus and son-in-law of the chief Emperor Galerius had branded him a tyrant. Constantine felt that a conversion to Christianity would easily assist him in claiming and retaining the throne that was in dispute. He had been successful in battle and was very loved by the common people.

In 313 Licinius and he issued at Milan the famous joint edict of tolerance. This declared that the two emperors had deliberated as to what would be advantageous for the security and welfare of the empire and had, above all, taken into consideration the service which man owed to the "deity". Therefore they had decided to grant the Christian sect and all others freedom in the exercise of religion. This was the first sign of laws for Freedom of Religion since the Codes of Hammurabi and Solomon. He also expressed his preference to Christianity and Christianity thus

became the official religion of Rome. It has been noted by many historians that Constantine showed no bias to any religion. At Constantine's death Constantius, his son becomes Emperor and a bloody time for pagans began again.

Constantius was an unwavering opponent of paganism; he closed all the temples and forbade sacrifices to the gods and goddesses under penalty of death. His maxim was: "Cesset superstitio; sacrificiorum aboleatur insignia", which translates to, "Let superstition cease; let the folly of sacrifice be abolished". Not like the old days when people had a choice of religion and deities. Laws and edicts became numerous against those that were the true practitioner. The Newly formed Roman church would begin to hold a series of meetings of their highest leaders to attempt to punish those that did not believe like them. This practice followed in the next rulers and with leaders of many lands it may also be seen that the persecution of Christians by the generations before could have had a lot to do with these new Laws.

In 380, Roman Emperor Theodosius

declared that all his subjects had to become Christians. Anyone following a different religion was a heretic and would be put to death. The heretics were to expect penalties by laws guided by divine wisdom. The Church didn't only kill the heretic; they also jailed his or her family and friends.

Their property was confiscated and given to "devout" Christians. Anyone who opposed or questioned the acts of thievery was immediately declared a disciple of the Devil and treated likewise. This law and practice followed anywhere the church went. These laws of divine right were later destined to become our modern Eminent Domain laws. Christians now felt free to loot the pagan temples of their gold and gems and take the choicest lands. In the process, they destroyed most Pagan literature and statuary. The Church destroyed the theater and any nonreligious music. They banned any painting or sculpture that did not have a religious (Christian) subjects matter. Christians ignored the natural world with all its wonders and science. Scientists and

Mathematicians were scorned and accused of devil worship.

Some great scholars in Greece during the time of Christian's growth period were working on science and astronomical theory and branded as sorcerers. Pythagoras, the mathematician, openly practiced philosophy, science and magic. He had a strong influence on Plato, who had not at the time been branded as a heretic and sorcerer, but clearly a believer in the mystic science. One can see in his work *Dialogues* Aristotle he clearly is under the influence of the magical theory in his *History of Animals*. Neither he nor Plato feared the magicians and the knowledge that exploration into unknown ideals provided. Most educated men of the times held the Christians in great disgust. They were the walls that kept knowledge out of the hands of the people.

Another of these ancient philosophers would be first to write of the mythical Unicorn. It appeared to Ctesias in 389 BC. He was a historian and Physician of ancient Greece. He said that the beast was a wild ass that was the same size, or

bigger than a horse. They had white bodies, dark red heads and dark blue eyes, with the tell-tale horn in the center of its head measuring about a foot and a half. It was his discovery that the dust gathered or made from the horn was supposed to protect against deadly diseases if mixed into a potion and other herbs. Or, if you drank from the horn, you would be protected against any poison. Ctesias was a practitioner of the arts but never got accused of Witchcraft. It appears from other texts that he was a favorite of the church and a healer of nobles and priests alike. Even though his discoveries may have been valid, the killing of a unicorn was a huge taboo for the practitioner.

There are several known Greek witches however. Medea is probably the most famous witch of antiquity. She is strong, possibly insane, and a murderous woman. Hecate is first a moon goddess, then a witch goddess who rules the nights and all its frightening creatures. Circe is a sorceress who turns her lovers into swine when she tires of them. The "new" Greek religion saw them as competition and turned them into evil hags,

as most cultures do. The leaders of Christendom were busy passing laws and enslaving a people through fear.

In 552 the Council of Constantino, Mellitus declares paganism and certain pagan rites to be heresy against God and punishable by death. He feared the growing strife in the Holy lands of Jerusalem was getting out of the Christians control. His bishops had reported the uprisings of a new philosophy who called themselves the true believers. The new religion of Islam was on a rise with new ideas and concepts. The people were tired of the ways of the new Christian and wanted to return back to the ways of Moses and Abraham. Within this sect came a new sect who practiced a strange philosophy that followed a prophet called Mohammad. Their life was a strict code according to the laws of Abraham and Moses. They called themselves Musliman (Muslim). They were descended from Moses and the teachings of the Old Christian ways. This took the strain of laws from the practitioner for a little while and directed it to a war of the Holy Lands.

The struggle and hiding of the Practitioner slackened, but would grow much more difficult as the Muslim community fought the Christians back. Converting all lands had left the Holy Land void and the development of a new religion following Mohammed, meaning “the praised one” was on the incline. The new Christian Church, while converting the world would now launch a series of holy wars against the Muslim’s who occupied the holy lands and sanction the practitioner hard at home. After many attempts to crush this new sect, it was determined to convert as many as possible and feed a Holy War against Mohammad. This was a slow process because the first crusade could not be launched until 1095 by Pope Urban II.

While waiting and building the armies of Christianity, the conversion process continued. The recruits for the Crusades were turned on the witch’s in hopes of giving them a choice. Fight the Holy War or be declared a witch and die. This would be training for the real war with the Mohammedan’s as well as placing those that were considered unholy and an abomination against

god's law at their disposal. Instead of death, they could force the practitioner into the war as a soldier.

During these times you also hear of knights going out to slay dragons, beasts, and giants roaming the earth. Even the story of David slaying the Giant in the Bible seems to confirm that creatures of myth were also plentiful in these days. These are the offspring of the angels and woman of Biblical History. From the Bible we also read of Dagon, a half-man half-fish to be their main deity. In the Bible it tells that on conquering the Israelites, the Philistines stole the Ark of the Covenant and placed it before the statue of Dagon. The Great Yahweh, in the Ark wrestled with Dagon and broke the statue. This shape-shifting marine Deity may once have been the Sumerian Oannes who emerged from the ocean to educate mankind.

The wealthy and influential leaders of the Christians decided that it would be best to convert the rich and let it tinkle down to the servants. The most significant conversions started in 597 A.D.,

when Augustine of Hippo went on his mission to convert the masses and stamp out the heathens to The British Isles. By showing the rulers what the holy soldiers of God had done to the heretics and claiming that nothing could happen to them since they were under god's protection caused a great rate of conversion to kings and rules. Since they were many clan wars over border disputes, a divine province of right fueled their wars. Now that the kings became Christian, it then was a right granted by god against the pagan and heretic.

The first to be converted was Ethelbert, King of Kent. Aurelius Augustinus (Augustine of Hippo or Saint Augustine) arrived in Kent with a very warm welcome even though King Ethelbert was a follower of the Norse God Odin. It was not long until the talk of war and the unstable kingdoms got to him and he converted to Christianity because he believed that this God of Abraham could help him win the war. I am sure it also appealed to him to think this God of the Christians had declared him the true and rightful ruler of all the people. His conversion really had a profound effect on the

people, especially after his defeat of Ceawlin. It is estimated that more than ten thousand people were converted to Christianity within weeks of the king's baptism. After Ethelbert's death Christianity suffered a reverse because the country folk were not ready to give up their heritage and old ways and his successor had not been converted.

The Christian conversions continued over the next twenty years and the Christian religion looked as if it would take over the entire known world. The now clever bishops knew the conversion of the kings was the way to go. If they used the practice of converting pagan Holidays to Christian dates, the process would take hold and with the kings support, they could outlaw the older religions becoming the only one in existence.

In 604, Archbishop Mellitus converted Sebert, the King of the East Saxons, whose successor would return to his pagan ways. This did not stop the disciples of Augustine; he had a royal title now and didn't want to lose it. In 627 he sent his bishops to convert King Ethelfrith King of Northumbria. Ethelfrith had usurped the thrown

from Edwin, a pagan and was an easy target since the bishops had him convinced that he could only have succeeded with the help of the Christian God. The next ten years would see more chaos and border wars. The conversion process would depend on who was in power or who was allied to which leader.

By the time of the Council in Trullo in 692, Christianity was becoming the power of the day. During this huge meeting of the powerful Christians, they made rules for their church and followers. Most of these rules would be aimed primarily at the rituals and practices of the craft. It can be noted that the Counsel in Trullo stated that sorcerers are to be reduced to serfdom and made over to the service of the Church. When the decree was passed and written it stated, "Whosoever, blinded by the devil and infected with pagan errors, holds another person for a witch that eats human flesh, and therefore burns her, eats her flesh, or gives it to others to eat, shall be punished with death". This edict was in conjunction with those made by King Wihtraed of Kent in 690 stated that

those who made offerings to the devil (all the old gods) could be fined; practitioners of the old ways would lose everything they worked to earn. This was a mere expansion on earlier laws barring pagan practices. They were mainly designed to keep the status of those in power and to allow a lawful disposition of land. Simply declare someone a witch and take their land.

The next four hundred years would see a back and forth movement of pagans and Christians, one never knew who was in control or when this religious control would end. A look at historical texts would indicate that the main religions were so bitter and at war, the true practitioner hid and lived their daily lives in secret.

King Cnut (Canute) in 1020 makes the broad law that King James would later convert into his edicts against witchcraft and paganism. King Cnut's Law reads,

“We earnestly forbid every form of heathenism: heathenism is, that men worship idols; that is, that they worship heathen gods, and the sun or the moon, fire or rivers,

water-wells or stones, or forest trees of any kind; or love witchcraft, or promote morth-work in any wise.

He was the first King to make a pact with the Holy Roman Church to lead them and his entire domain to Christendom. Which the new Pope was glad since he was a Scandinavian and his heritage was strictly Norse. It appears that his mistress was also one of the members of the first recorded group of witches in 1015. We call this the first because of all others a Book of shadows that remain hidden and in existence and referenced throughout this book.

This law would cover every person that was not a member of the Christian movement. King Cnut effectively made an outlaw out of every person who planted his crops by the moons phases. He made a witch out of every person who attempted to heal the sick with herbs or offered prayers to their dead ancestors. It is my view that this one edict was a true turning point in human history. Now that Christianity was strong and widespread, enforcement now had a decisive

description of what an evil person was. The next two hundred years would see the complete takeover of the Christian religion. The Practitioner would be sought out rather than left to their space and beliefs with the occasional persecution. It became an order of the church to wipe all heretics out and bring them before god and what was called justice.

In 1252 Pope Innocent IV, also known as Sinibaldo de Fieschi, Count of Lavagna, and a part of the ruling class, commanded his inquisitors to use torture to get confessions of witchcraft and heresy. It didn't take much, all there had to be was a person who claimed that you had used sorcery or uttered words that caused them harm. It was a continuation of The Church's First Council of Lyons. His movements against the pagan can be seen as strictly political. By ordering stricter punishment and harsher inquisitions, Pope Innocent could aim at political leaders with his doctrine and laws. He had nothing to fear because he had the protection of King Louis IX and several other "Good Christians".

In 1318 and again in 1320, Pope John XXII brought Witchcraft under the jurisdiction of the Holy Inquisition following the path of those he followed. The church became the people to fear. They could accuse you of witchcraft and have you burned at the stake. The inquisition was always ready to eradicate any heretic, so the witch trials expanded. The women and men confessed while being tortured about the orgy-like nature of the Sabbaths and meetings with the devil. They would say anything the inquisitionist wanted to stop the torture. They admitted to casting spells that harmed their neighbors' health, domestic animals, or crops; of using human body parts, even children's, in their magical brews; of cannibalism, particularly involving newborn babies; of giving birth to the children of demons. Any horrid act of the imagination could be confessed. All acts so foul and detestable from people who were the guardians of the sacred earth. It can also be stated that most were not practitioners but political and common villagers aimed at showing the power of the inquisition.

The laws did not stop the pagans and old religion, between 1330 and 1333; priests complained that in Ireland, the people worshiped Pagan Deities and began their move north from London.

In England, some monks were caught worshiping Diana in woodland shrines. About the same time, the poet Petrarch, while visiting Cologne, saw women attending Pagan rituals. Old habits die hard, country people are conservative, and the transition was not as easy as the Church would have it. Since the church hated women because of the concept that a woman was responsible for the original sin, Women were drawn to the natural religion where they had equal, if not higher stance than a man. Here they were the divine givers of life and the life force.

Naturally, a secret religion that allowed a woman an important place, appealed not only to the hereditary witches, but to many converts as well. Recruits were never welcomed, though, as they were always potential spies. So the religion went underground and became a secret society.

Many of the people that were later tortured and killed had no connection whatsoever to the Old Religion. The real followers knew, from long experience, how to hide and remain undetected.

For the next two hundred years the church passed laws and sought to destroy the practitioners. The Dark Ages had begun as well as what all witches of today call The Burning Times.

Chapter Two

The Dark Ages

The Book of Shadows of 1015 passed to another of Norwegian Decent on January 10th, 1061. It is written inside “Fore she was a noble and faithful goddess and companion; I accept this charge with perfect love and perfect trust”. It also shows some minor persecutions and suspicions in the group, but no-one seems to have been affected. It is written that the Lady’s death and previous guardian of the book occurred in the hour of Pisces. At her death she left instructions that the group would avoid all interactions and that the traditions of lineage would be followed. So we can infer that one of her relatives or charges was now leader and High Priestess of the group, which would last until the book records falling into the hands of Yuli, a young male of the household by

rite of succession in 1104 and resided in what, is now Germany. It is not clear why two females succeeded each other since the rite goes from one sex to the other to maintain the balance.

The witch was safe in Germany during this time. The imperial conflict with the Christian church continued as Pope Paschal II (1099-1118) repeated Heinrich's excommunication and deposition in 1102. At Mainz the next year Heinrich IV proclaimed amnesty and peace in the empire for four years but with harsh punishments of mutilation and death for both free and un-free violators of the church's laws. Many of the locals practiced their ancient ways without interference. It appears that by this date there were four offshoots of the original group of 1015. One remained in The British Isles, One was in Tuscany, and the other remained in The Black Forest Region of Germany under the strong hands of Hans Mook.

Hans records a new spell and rite. It reads, "Take heed and take those things that are wise and easy to carry, with you a green candle and some rue. Place the candles on the alter made of

sandstone and call on the circle of protection. Call ye on the spirits of the Wind for to hide your scent. Call on the Spirits of the shadows to cloak you in their mist.

In your heart and in your soul,
Think of a thing light and cold.
Sit with your back to an oak,
Pray to the goddess to remove thy yoke.
Light the wax the colors of green

I call the spirits of shadows so ye shall be
unseen.

Hans possesses the book until 1170. Then it travels back to The British Isles. According to The Book of Shadows, Lilith has the book and the off shouts of the group are six fold. When she took charge of the group it appears that Bela II of Hungary banned the witch trials and gave the practitioner their freedom, while other country leaders seem to increase the bloody trials. At this time a new group is sent to the community of

Malmö. It is first mentioned in church records from year 1170, when the heathen was expelled to Maloi. In the records it's called Malmöi and Malmöge, while the Icelandic people called the city for Malmögar. All names are put together by the words malm (gravel or sand) and höge (ridge). This is thought to be the very first organized group of practitioners to cross the Atlantic. It appears they left to avoid the conflict that was occurring in the Christian sect and to take a copy of the book of ways to a safe place. It may be noted that a hand copied book from the original was given to each branch and developed from each group as the splits occurred. Each new coven would then expound on what was already written thereby, making each Book of Shadows very unique. The Book that remained in The British Isles resided with the lady of Kilkea Castle. Being a relative of the King she didn't have to worry about the witch trials that were embarking to a full scale.

There is not much evidence of transitional spells and potions written in the Book of Shadows

while in the hands of The Lady of Kilkea. We can assume that this is because of the witch trials and Black Death that was the scourge of the land. It seems that with the witch trials and the strife in the church, the practitioners were in hiding. The Book passes from the Lady of Kilkea to Kenneth in 1217.

The passage written on its brittle pages states “Kenneth being of my kin, and having did as required of him, I do pass the knowledge of my generations unto him, shall he govern them with perfect love and trust. Let the pestilence that has caused so many noble folk to pass into the darkness pass him and his kin. May they be trustful unto he and his liege”. It is dated December, in the year of our Lord 1217.

In February 1217, Kenneth’s clan wrote a spell and charm to avoid those that harass you. Kenneths’s Spell to make someone go away and stop harassing you is written thus. He writes,” Take heed my followers this must be performed during a waning moon, avoid those that are with sickness while exercising this charm”.

On a piece of parchment or bark of white

oak, write you the name and birth date of the person you are wishing "away". Now fill an air-tight vessel with water, making sure it has been fetched from a clean source. Add a pinch of one or more of these magical herbs: ash tree leaves, clover, lilac, garlic clove. Take the paper with the name on it and fold it three times. Tie a black thread around it and drop it in the water. Seal the vessel and place it in a safe spot in a cold and damp place. Once the person has left you alone or no longer pose a problem to you, take the vessel to the forest, from the eyes of man and empty it to the earth. Keep the vessel instead of leaving it to Mother Earth so the spirits will know to keep that person away from their harassing acts forever and be sure that ye heed and purify it if its use is needed again.

Deborah his assumed second writes to acquire knowledge you must do the following in the hour and time of mercury, the messenger of the Gods. Do this when there is naught another around.

A spell to open the third eye follows. Fill a small purple bag (or a piece of cloth that you can

wrap herbs in and tie up) with acacia, honeysuckle, peppermint, rosemary, thyme, yarrow, cloves, dandelion, lilac, lavender, and calendula. Gather the edges of the cloth and tie a string around it if you are using a cloth, or if you used a small purple bag, tie it shut. (Drawstring bags work best.) Using the juice of the Violet rose or a dark bark of the Poke berry, inscribe an eye on the front of the bag. Rub the bag on the third eye which is located on the crown above thy brow (forehead) whenever performing divination or needing psychic sight, and sleep with it under your pillow every night. Both Kenneth and Deborah records that they have picked a successor and are getting weary on July 10th, 1240. She further relays that a sister has been taken to see the Usurper Bishop of the Holy Roman Church and she fears for her safety. This Book records a new Owner at the May Day Festival of 1242.

In March of 1241, it began. King Boleslav V (the Brave) of Poland was the first to meet the Mongols at the city of Krakow. The battle was a disaster, ending in the death of Boleslav and the

shattering of his army, the survivors fled west to the city of Liegnitz, where the Teutonic Knights (a German Christian military/crusading order founded about a hundred years after the First Crusade) were desperately trying to form an army to stop the Mongol advance. Khaidu, leader of the Mongol northern army, led his forces in hot pursuit. On April 9, in Anno Domini 1241, The Christian Crusaders watched in horror and disbelief as its proud knighthood, wearing the cross of Christ, was utterly annihilated at the hands of Khaidu, a pagan.

The ruler of Silesia, Grand Prince Henry II, was killed in the battle. The nearby realm of Silesia was swiftly ransacked, but the Bohemian Army finally stopped Khaidu's advance. This didn't matter to the Mongol; he merely headed south, for Hungary. The last great hope to stop the Mongols was gone, and the way lay open into Central Europe. The Roman Catholic Church didn't have time to finish the current session of witch trials. With Mongols at the door, their attention and resources had to be reallocated. The pagans had moved against them and were winning.

Our Book passes to Lioneise in 1301. It is also taken from Great Britain to Byzantine Empire.

The Arpad dynasty had ruled Hungary since 907 and ended with the death of Andras III. These nomadic Magyars had adopted Christianity and accepted an absolute monarchy under the Arpad kings. Andras defeated the late Holy Roman Emperor Rudolph I, who claimed Hungary for his son Albrecht, but the king was unable to control the Hungarian magnates and his death begins a civil war that will continue for the next seven years. It appears that Lioneise had hopes of regrouping a large section of practitioners there who had been dispensed and killed by the wars of Hungary. The Small group that remained had been under extreme pressure to convert to a sect of practitioner who came from the Oriental sectors. The Yuan Dynasty of China was pressuring the wise ones to reveal their secrets and spells so they could be preserved. It was felt that with the use of magic spells and charms, they could overcome inter secular differences and begin its border expansions. The practitioners of the day did not want to assist in

violence or take part in political ventures. Already the Book of Shadows had been in the hands of the house of King Edward II of England. There it may have to return for its own safety.

In Ireland the church announces more witchcraft and evil doing in the early witch trials of 1324 and 1325. In these trials, the Bishop of Ossory was the judge, jury, and executioner. One woman accused another of killing her man by means of witchcraft. As even the most skeptical person can see this was a clear case of jealousy and a defenseless woman with money, makings for a good trial. The trial ended in her maid being burned at the stake and a wealthy widow, one Alice Kyteler, escaping to parts unknown. We now have records of three of the books in existence, one belonging to a group in Egypt, another in Great Britain, and another one that had went to Iceland. For the next 60 years, no entries were written in the Book from Great Britain. Not until 1350 do we note that a new owner who goes by the name Sybil of Ghent dates the following spell for calling demons as November 1350, under the rule of the

Third Edward (Plantagenet). Sybil relays that certain demons are in the realm and that she has discovered that by using this incantation they will come to your aide as they did for wise Solomon the King. As we all know, her term demon was merely the usage of the energies she could call forth.

In this operation it is necessary to make some sort of sacrifice unto the Demon for your task. Sometimes white animals are sacrificed to the good Spirits and black to the maleficent ones. Such sacrifices consist of blood and flesh. The sacrificial animal should be virgin, never giving birth to any off spring. When blood is to be sacrificed it should be drawn also from virgin quadrupeds or birds, but before offering , ask the demon by saying, "May this Sacrifice be a proper offering unto ye, noble and lofty Being, be agreeable and pleasing unto your desires; be ye ready to obey us, and ye shall receive greater ones. Then shall ye cause the sacrifice to be perfumed and pleasing according to the rules of Art. When it is necessary, with all the proper Ceremonies, to

make Sacrifices of fire, they should be made of wood which hath some quality referring especially unto the Spirits invoked; as juniper, or pine, unto the Spirits of Saturn; box, or oak, unto those of Jupiter; cornel, or cedar, unto those of Mars; laurel unto those of the Sun; myrtle unto those of Venus; hazel unto those of Mercury; and willow unto those of the Moon. When ye make sacrifices of food and drink, everything necessary should be prepared within the Circle, and the meats should be covered with a fine clean cloth of the color desirable to the summoned spirit.

This must be done with new bread, freshly baked and good sparkling wine according to the nature of the Planet who rules the demon you wish to summons. Animals, such as fowls or pigeons, should be roasted over the wood of their persuasion. Especially should thou have a vessel of clear and pure fountain water, and before entering into the Circle, thou shalt summon the Spirits by their proper Names, or at least those chief among them, saying: In whatsoever place ye may be, ye Spirits, who are invited to this feast,

come ye and be ready to receive our offerings, presents, and sacrifices, and ye shall have hereafter yet more agreeable oblations.

Perfume all items with sweet incense, and sprinkle them with pure cleansed water; then commence to conjure the Spirits until they shall come. Be ye not of weak heart or mind, for this can cause you great peril even unto death. This is the manner of making sacrifices in all arts and operations wherein it is necessary, and acting thus, the Spirits will be prompt to serve thee. Beware of any trickery that may be amidst, for these spirits are lofty and keen to remain in this plane.

Here ends our Rite, which if thou thoroughly take into thy memory, thou shalt be able, if it please thee, even to fly with the wings of the wind. But if you take little heed to that which is written, and follow not this Book, never shalt thou attain the desired end in any Magical experiment or operation whatsoever. Sybil used this spell to call forth a demon called Broxa.

Broxa is a nocturne mystical entity of the times. Broxa is sometimes referred to as a witch

and sometimes as a demon. Broxas supposedly could fly and change their shape at will, being also able to read the future. It was believed that they drank blood just like vampires and could be summons with the sacrifice of blood. The Jews feared this demon because it was said to suck the milk from goats during the night leaving them barren. Because of the Christian-Judo conflict of the times it would be pure logic that Sybil would call on this demon for assistance. Sybil held this Book of shadows until she passed it on to Elizabeth of The Green Wood Road on All Hallows Day 1364.

Elizabeth reveals that she has rule and must maintain three separate groups of thirteen until she can find someone that is worthy to lead and keep the covenants of the old ways. It appears that the others had succumbed to the plague and were not of sound mind to resume their duties as Head of the coven. Elizabeth was known as a seer or oracle of the woods and a great witch.

This is not out of the ordinary since throughout history, oracles and known practitioners

have often been based in forests and surrounded by groves of trees. The shrine of Zeus at Dodona is one of the oldest and most famous. It was founded originally around 800 B.C. by an Egyptian missionary priestess from Thebes. The oracle centered around this tree and endured for more than 1200 years. It was replaced by a temple in the fourth century A.D. According to ancient tradition, all Greek temples were originally trees, and later made of trees. Even when stone temples came into vogue, none were dedicated without an associated holy tree.

History reports that the first temple of Apollo at Delphi was a hut made of laurel trees. In many images surviving from ancient times, Artemis and other goddesses may be found standing close to sacred trees. Early Christians even would model their steeples for these places, so the practitioner would be tempted to seek the church instead of the oracle. This was the forerunning design decreed by the Pope for churches so the practitioner may come and be recognized, and if they did not convert, punished.

After the middle of the thirteenth century, the then recently-constituted Papal Inquisition began to bring more charges of witchcraft against the people in its domain. Alexander IV who was in power in 1258 stated because of the number of claims, "the inquisitors should limit their intervention to those cases in which there was some clear presumption of heretical belief (*manifeste haeresim saparent*)". It was at any rate at Toulouse that in 1275 the earliest example of a witch burned to death after judicial sentence of an inquisitor was seen. The woman, half crazy, "confessed" to having brought forth a monster after intercourse with an evil spirit and to having nourished it with babies' flesh which she procured in her nocturnal expeditions. The claims all untrue, but what the church had told her to confess, she named others that had assisted her.

In the witch trial carried on at Toulouse in 1334, out of sixty-three persons accused of offences of witchcraft, eight were handed over to the secular arm to be burned and the rest were imprisoned either for life or for a long term of years. Two of the condemned, both elderly women,

after repeated application of torture, confessed that they had assisted at witches' Sabbaths and that they would supply evidence that the Queen was indeed a witch herself. She was sentenced and executed immediately because no-one wanted to infuriate the royal family.

In 1324 Petronilla de Midia was burnt at Kilkenny in Ireland at the insistence of Richard, Bishop of Ossory; but analogous cases in the British Isles seem to have been very rare since the practitioner was strong because of their Druidic Brothers. Germany also seemed to be a safe haven for the practitioner during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. Switzerland was a country to be avoided during this early time. In that country, there was no trial just condemnation and death.

About the year 1400 we find wholesale witch prosecutions being carried out at Berne, Switzerland by Peter de Gruyères, a secular judge, again in the Valais (1428-1434) when 200 witches were put to death or at Briancon in 1437 when over 150 suffered, some of them by drowning. In France at this period the crime of witchcraft was

frequently designated as "Vauderie" through some confusion seemingly with the followers of Peter Waldes. This confusion between sorcery and a particular form of heresy was unfortunately bound to bring a still larger number of persons under the judgmental eyes of the inquisitors. For the most part these trials were political or to get rid of poor and bothersome persons.

During these dark times, war among the clans and the uniting of Britain was also underway. The laws against the practice of certain heathen rites became stricter as Christianity grew in power, the Church tried her strength against 'witches' in high places and was victorious, and in 1484 open war was declared against the last seen remains of what is deemed heathenism in the famous Bull of Innocent VIII.

Pope Innocents VIII merely wanted to decrease the population of the alternative religions and attack the fertility rituals. This very ugly man couldn't find a suitable mate and it is said that he hated women as a whole. He authorized the writing of *Maleus Malificarum* (The Hammer of Witches)

that would become the inquisitionist bible on witches and prosecutions. It was compiled by two Dominican inquisitors, Jacob Sprenger and Heinrich Kramer. Pope Innocents had already allied with the now majority Christian nation of Britain. The Church was in total control of the British Crown by Right of Ascension they made Henry VII the true king. The church was in all the capitals of the Known European World. They had problems in Germany and France with the division of the church, but seemed to excel with the naturalists of Hungary, Spain, and the poorer countries who relied on the larger ones for support either of staple foods or arms. The Church could withhold support to all countries who did not accept its belief structure.

Henry's political acumen was also evident in his handling of foreign affairs. He played Spain off of France by arranging the marriage of his eldest son, Arthur, to Catherine of Aragon, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella. Arthur died within months and Henry secured a papal dispensation for Catherine to marry Arthur's brother, the future

Henry VIII. This event had the widest-ranging effect of all Henry's actions. He was a King through the rights of God now that he had the total blessings of the church. He could ever break church doctrines and still be the church puppet.

The next written text in the Worn parchment book comes in the form of a love spell entered in 1440 by JoAnne. The spell reads:

Faery dust travel on magical wind
Send the Fates to do as I bid.
Bring us together with love and trust.
Make it his will, this you must
For if it is so and we cannot be,
Then make us friends eternally.
By the powers of the universe
And the spirits that guide my quest
Bring him forward, do your best

It seems that our JoAnne wanted to gain the love of her life, possibly a married man. According to the texts this worked within a

fortnight. It is also believed that JoAnne was enamored by Henry VII's son or a person close to Henry. This would clearly indicate that she was of the royal court.

Henry the VIII took the throne in 1509. Already there was a stir in the Church because he had already broken with church tradition in his desire for a male heir. The church never looked at the disposition given to Catherine to marry her brother-in-law. With the separation of the Church of England from Roman Catholicism, things could change again. The separation was actually a by-product of Henry's obsession with producing a male heir; Catherine of Aragon failed to produce a male and the need to maintain dynastic legitimacy forced Henry to seek an annulment from the Pope in order to marry Anne Boleyn.

Anne Boleyn became the second wife of King Henry VIII of England. But Henry wasn't happy, her reputation was smeared due to the fact she was unable to bear her husband a child so he claimed she was a witch. She had a sixth finger on one hand which was believed to be a sign that the

young lady was a witch. He asks for another divorce. Pope Clement VII refused to give him an annulment again. This caused vicious feelings between the church and state.

The break from Rome was accomplished through law, not social outcry; Henry, as Supreme Head of the Church of England, acknowledged this by slight alterations in worship ritual instead of a wholesale reworking of religious dogma. England moved into an era of "conformity of mind" with the new royal supremacy. You must acknowledge the king and turn from the corrupt church and the heathen country folk. There are rumors that the seers were called to court, one being a certain Ursula Shipton. Ursula scared the King so much she was banned from every appearing in public under the penalty of beheading by the king.

By 1536, all ecclesiastical and government officials were required to publicly approve the break with Rome and each person was to take an oath of loyalty to the Kings Church, the Church of England. The king moved away from the medieval idea of ruler as chief lawmaker and overseer of

civil behavior, to the modern idea of ruler as the ideological icon and spiritual leader of the state. The King was the divine monarch as was the will of God. During Henry VIII, we see the first public emergence of a Coven of the Practitioner. Henry even blamed his wife Ann Boleyn of being a witch so he could have her executed and marry Jane Seymour. Henry died in 1546 leaving the throne to his nine year old son Edward. That same year all The Books of Shadows seems to have dropped from sight.

Under the rule of Edward, his uncle actually was the king. He made sure Henry's treason and heresy laws were repealed, transforming England into a haven for what was considered the continental heretics. He opened the doors for a free worship system in Britain. Because this child king didn't last long, neither did the free religion edicts of the time. Soon came a more radical and strict Protestantism. Edward and his uncle ruled until 1553 at which time Lady Jane Gray was placed on the thrown for Nine days until Mary I was placed on the throne.

Mary's rule was a nightmare to Protestants and Pagans. Her main goal was to restore the fanatical Roman Catholics back to England. It may also be said that over the long period and the growth, the Holy Roman Church had become extremely rich. Her persecution of both groups got her the rightfully deserved name Bloody Mary. She was totally unsuccessful in her talks and England remained Protestant. All Mary succeeded in doing was losing a large possession of land and placing the country in total economic poverty. She died leaving the throne to Elizabeth the First, another daughter of Henry VIII.

Elizabeth I was placed on the throne and attempted to settle the many disputes on religion and stabilize the nation's economy. History has her as a Catholic, but other sources state that she was a traditional Celt. During Elizabeth's reign, literature bloomed. This was the time of Spenser, Marlowe, and Shakespeare. Francis Drake and Walter Raleigh were instrumental in expanding English influence in the New World and throughout Europe. Fashion and education came to the fore because of

Elizabeth's knowledge and intuition. Courtly behavior and extravagant dress was a mark of the era. Good Queen Bess, as she was called, maintained a regal air until the day she died; a quote, from a letter by Paul Hentzen, reveals the aging queen's regal nature: "Next came the Queen in the sixty-fifth year of her age, as we were told, very majestic; her face oblong, fair, but wrinkled; her eyes small yet black and pleasant; her nose a little hooked; her lips narrow... she had in her ear two pearls, with very rich drops... her air was stately; her manner of speaking mild and obliging." This regal figure surely had her faults, but the last Tudor excelled at rising to challenges and emerging victorious.

Our Book of Shadows would indicate that Good Queen Bess held the position of a Priestess in 1554. She was learned in the ways of mysticism but not a part of the original branch. It appears that she was from another branch that came from Sweden. During her rule literature and arts excelled and the country once again flourished. She was deposed by her cousin and cast into prison.

She ruled England until 1603. She was a patron of women and a practitioner named Elisabeth Sawyer, who told the queen that she must obey the laws of nature. The Queen attempted to heed Elisabeth's advice until the neighbors made false statements about Elisabeth and she was charged with witchcraft. The Queen attempted to settle the differences and help Elisabeth, but because of her own turmoil was unable to. She was imprisoned leaving the throne to James the First.

Elisabeth Sawyer was known as "Witch of Edmonton". She was accused of bewitching her neighbor's children and cattle because they refused to buy her brooms. When she was being harassed she finally confessed to being a witch. She was hanged for confessing to be a witch. One of Elisabeth's best known spells was The Spell Apple. Perhaps this is where snow Whites story comes from, only with a different spell. The Spell Apple is a spell for banishing. Elisabeth gave it to the Queen, hoping it would banish her enemies, but it was too late. The apple is cut in half sideways. One half is rubbed with mint while the bad habit or

problem to be banished is said out loud. The halves are then rejoined with a skewer, tied with ribbon, and buried. As the apple decomposes, the problem will go away. Unfortunately, the queen's problems were too close and the apple didn't have time to decay. It is rumored that a great apple tree stands in that very spot today attesting to the problems that caused Good Queen Bess's demise.

James came to the English throne in 1603. He had been king of Scotland for twenty nine years. Now he was king of both. James' Scottish kingship did little to prepare him for the English monarchy. England and Scotland had been rivals on the island since the first emigration of the Anglo-Saxon races and prejudice was part of his life. This inherent mistrust combined with Catholic-Protestant and Episcopal-Puritan tensions, severely limiting James' prospects of a truly successful reign. His personality also caused him great problems. He had a penchant for those of the same sex and never wanted marriage. James was very quick to the appropriate words and well-read. He is considered one of the best educated men of the

times. He fiercely believed in the divine right of kingship and his own importance. James saw little use for Parliament. He hated Catholics and all other religions except Protestants. During his reign there were many attempts by Catholic and The Practitioners to kill him. The Catholic Church attempted it in the Famous Gun Powder Plot.

In 1590 the North Brunswick Coven attempts to sink King James ship because of his views and total hatred for the Practitioners. In 1591, King James burns members of the Brunswick coven alive. The Book of the Coven remained safe and passed to Lady Gwendolyn. In 1597 James published a book that he wrote on the subject of witchcraft, his Daemonologie. In this work, James put the traditional arguments in favor of a belief in witchcraft as being evil and controlled by the devil and demons, and his lifelong interest in the subject is evidenced by the fact that he himself participated in a number of trials of alleged witches.

In 1603, King James makes Witchcraft a capital offense. James never knew his parents. It

is George Buchanan, one of his tutors and a staunch Calvinist who is the greatest influence on him. It was under Mr. Buchanan's strict teaching methods that King James became one of the most learned and intellectually curious men to ever sit on any throne. It is very curious that such intelligence would not see the true nature of the practitioner. Mr. Buchanan was 64 years old when he began tutoring the young king and possibly also had much influence on his sexual orientation even though it is said that he married and loved Anne, Queen of Denmark very much. He passed laws against acts of sodomy and cross dressing to cloak his own behavior. He is the true patriot of the Christian Faith and proves it in his royal proclamations.

True to his word, King James and Charles Stuart commissions a committee of scholars together in 1604 and orders the holy records translated and thusly give us the Official King James Version of The Holy Bible. James did not wish to use the current versions of the Roman Catholics and felt this would unite his empire as well as give more credence to his Church of

England. Under his direction, the soon to be oft-quoted Exodus 22:18 was changed from "Thou must not suffer a Poisoner to live" to "Thou must not suffer a witch to live." After the book became known many complained that he had mistranslated things, but this didn't seem to matter, because he gave a Proclamation, making it a law that all shall use his translated Bible.

In 1603 he made it the only book of religion that could legally exist. The Strong Catholic Church even ordered his death, but failed. James started the main burning of books on mysticism and any non-religious books that existed. This way there would be no choice but to accept his version of the Christian Bible.

In Our Book of shadows it is stated by Gwendolyn, the keeper of The Book in 1605, that it would be a wise time for all groups of The Isles to migrate and stow away on departing ships to the new lands to join with those of the faith there. This was also the cause of many persons immigrating to the new continent of America. Most immigrants wanted to continue their old practices without

further persecution. Unfortunately since many Puritans and Catholics also immigrated, the persecutions would continue. In the New world, the Puritan "Holy Commonwealth," some thirty five churches had been formed by 1640. King James's policies of The Divine Right of the King was not only a royal needle in the backs of the priests, but also acted as a great wall between the major Christian sects.

In 1625 Charles I became king of England and Scotland, although the governments of the two countries, they still continued to be independent until the time of Queen Anne. Most of his reign was devoted to a struggle with the House of Commons of the English Parliament, a struggle that erupted into civil war and ended with the beheading of the king for treason by order of Parliament. Charles attempted to force a new prayer book on the Scots, which resulted in rebellion. Charles' forces were ill prepared due to lack of proper funds, causing the king to call, first, the Short Parliament, and finally the Long Parliament. King and Parliament again reached no

agreement; Charles foolishly tried to arrest five members of Parliament on the advice of Henrietta Maria, which brought matters to a head. The struggle for supremacy led to civil war. Charles raised his standard against Parliamentary forces at Nottingham in 1642. Charles lost the war and was beheaded in 1649 as a war criminal, an enemy of England. This placed Oliver Cromwell, a strict Puritan, in the main role as ruler of England under the New Commonwealth.

The Thirteen Year War was ending in 1625 on the European mainland. It seemed that in this time, all continents and kingdoms were struggling for their very existence. The kings warred for borders and religious freedom. The Practitioner escaped most of this bloodshed, but the witch burnings went on. During these wars it seemed to be a contest to see who could destroy more witches and innocents, the Catholic's or Protestants.

Meanwhile, in England, Oliver Cromwell gave himself the title of "Lord Protector" against all evils to the Commonwealth. This would include

protector of the Puritan faith. The laws against pagans or anyone that was not Puritan was very strict. As a follower of History will see, laws against anything that was not the ruling parties seem to take precedence and an attempt to erase from history anything that was different is the rule. With the death of the ancient constitution and Parliament in control, attention was turned to crushing rebellions of the realm. Cromwell forced submission from the nobility, stopped the newspapers and printers and defeated Leveller rebels in Burford.

Annihilating the more radical elements of revolution resulted in political conservatism, which eventually led to the restoration of the monarchy. Cromwell's army slaughtered over forty percent of the country Irishmen, who clung unyieldingly to Catholicism and loyalist sentiments who followed the older ways; the remaining Irishmen were forcibly transported to County Connaught with the Act of Settlement in 1653. Scottish Presbyterians fought for a Stuart restoration, in the person of Charles II, but were

handily defeated, ending the last remnants of civil war. The army then turned its attention to internal matters. Oliver's son, Richard was not a successful ruler and this left an opening for the true Monarchy to return under the rule of Charles II.

Charles' era is remembered as the time of "Merry Olde England". The monarchy, although limited in scope, was successfully restored. Charles' tolerance was astounding considering the situation of England at the time of his ascension, but was necessary for his reign to stand a chance at success. He was intelligent and a patron of scientific research instead of religious doctrine. He was somewhat lazy as a ruler, choosing to wait until the last moment to make a decision. The British attitude towards Charles II is humorously revealed in this quote: "Charles II was always very merry and was therefore not so much a king as a Monarch. During the civil war, he had rendered valuable assistance to his father's side by hiding in all the oak-trees he could find. He was thus very romantic and popular and was able after the death of Cromwell to descend to the throne."

During this reign of Charles, it appears that our Book surfaced and became the sole responsibility of Neville and his consort. It records its entry into the hands of Neville of the House Lermur on May, 12th.1667. It was again handed to Mary his daughter for her safekeeping on March 25th, 1672. It is assumed that Mary was too young to undergo her rites of assent to the status of ruler of the craft and take charge of the powerful book of shadows. Mary begins to write and takes on the name Isadora, which means Gift of Isis or Gifted with many Ideals. Isadora lives up to her names meaning. It is her work that is read in many books of magic and spells. She gives much advice on love and how to obtain the perfect love.

It is written to attract perfect union; you must gather a candle the color of blood on the night when Venus is in the sky. Take a vermilion colored canvas or paper and use the richest of red inks. Light the candle at the stroke of midnight and write your name on the canvas, under your name write that person who most is pleasing to you for companionship. Draw the heart of Cupid around

the names and write thrice your birth date over both. Fold the paper in three folds and burn it in the hot flames of the candle. Say aloud to the guardians of the winds, "Winds of love, turn not into chance. Abide that which I desire with my heart, let the color red which shows my desires fill the winds and carry the thought of love and companionship that I desire to compel my love to call on me." Repeat this nine times and do this for nine nights and on the tenth night he shall be there by you're side.

At this point Mary also has traces on several of the groups that have split from the original group. She receives a letter from Louisa asking her to aide her in protecting her group from the Spanish Inquisitors. Under the rule of James II, Mary had no real choice but to send an envoy to Spain with best wishes and rituals that could be performed to assist the group in hiding. She also had contact with groups in the New England Colonies of America and New France of Canada.

In New France the people believed in magic and witchcraft. Tales are told of flying canoes,

werewolves and encounters with the devil were common. The clergy is called to exorcise a suspected sorceress, but this never reached the religious furor of the Salem witch hunts. Most of the time it was put to rest or the tales scared the clergy so much the area of the sighting was recorded as a place of taboo. Some thought that this evil was brought with them to the new land. Some feared that it was the demons of the natives they had encountered.

Meanwhile, back in merry old England, James II's religious and political views were intertwined throughout James's public life. He openly opposed the Test Act of 1673, which barred all Catholics and Dissenters from holding administrative positions. James relinquished the post of Lord High Admiral and went abroad. Within months of his accession, James had to crush a rebellion of Protestants who rallied around his nephew James, Duke of Monmouth and son of Charles II. The Protestants were easily defeated, and James exhibited little tolerance for those that were not catholic. Monmouth was captured and

beheaded. James appointed Judge Jeffries to preside over the "Bloody Assizes" which executed, tortured, or sent into slavery the Protestant and pagans. James ambitiously appointed Catholics to high positions although loyal councilors advised against it. The nation turned against James and he fled to France, leaving the ruler ship in the hands of William III and Mary II. Now Britain would be for the first time ruled by The House of Orange and The House of Stuart.

The reign of Mary II and William III marked the end of true royal rule. Parliament ruled at this time. William spent the greatest part of the time as King in continental battles against Catholicism. Mary II sits back and wasted away in melancholy. She never regretted her father being ousted from the throne and was such a subservient wife to William that affairs of State didn't seem to bother her at all. They passed their rule to Queen Ann in 1702. For the next two-hundred and fifty years there would be many swings and divisions to both the practitioner and the Christians. Most major groups and affiliate religions would try to push

their dogma on the rest of the world. While all major religions fought to be the one true people of the creator, the practitioner remained in the shadows, awaiting their time to walk among the human race again, and known to the world for what they were. They were the Pagan, Wiccan, and witch. It was not until 1951 that the laws against Witchcraft were repealed in England.

There is general agreement that Wicca and the worship of a natural religion first became a mass movement in recent times in England during the 1920's and grew the publishing of books by Gerald Gardner and other prominent authors on the subject of Witchcraft. It has expanded at a furious rate in North America and Europe. The Honorable Mr. Gardner began what is now called the Gardnerian Tradition of Wicca. About the same time, Alex Sanders began the Alexandrian Tradition. With a new interest in the old ways, a host of other offshoots that today number in the hundreds. The formal appeal the new age Wiccan seems to be that you can be a solitary practitioner as well as form your own opinions and views. I

must point out this is not what was intended by our creator and this is not the Pagan Way. A True group is really necessary for any higher magical practices, no matter what others say.

Wicca is one of the largest of the minority religions in the United States today. Though many battles, it is recognized by the government as an official religion. However; it is virtually unknown by the general public because of its secrecy. This is because almost all Wiccans hide their religious beliefs and practices. When they do come forward most are persecuted. The Practitioner still lives a normal life with magic and devotion to the group. It's amazing that their forgiveness is so great after all the persecution of the ages. The Wiccan doctrine and creed reads with such passion and equality of life that it cannot be ignored as the true religion of goodness.

Live and Let live
Fairly take and fairly give.
Cast the circle thrice about

To keep the evil spirits out.
To bind the spell every time
Let the spell be spake in rhyme.
Soft of eye and light of touch,
Speak little, listen much.
Deosil go by waxing moon,
Chanting out the Witches' Rune.
Widdershins go by waning moon,
Chanting out the baneful rune.
When the Lady's moon is new,
Kiss the hand to her times two
When the moon rides at her peak,
Then your heart's desire seeks.
Heed the North wind's mighty gale,
Lock the door and drop the sail.
When the wind comes from the South,
Love will kiss thee on the mouth.
When the wind blows from the West,
Departed souls will have no rest.
When the wind blows from the East,
Expect the new and set the feast.
Nine woods in the cauldron go,
Burn them fast and burn them slow.

Elder be the Lady's tree.
Burn it not or cursed you'll be.
When the wheel begins to turn,
Let the Beltane fires burn,
When the wheel turns to Yule,
Light the log, and the Horned One rules.
Heed ye flower, bush and Tree,
By the Lady, Blessed Be.
Where the rippling waters go,
Cast a stone and truth you'll know.
When ye have a true need,
Hearken not to other's greed.
With a fool no season spend,
Lest ye be counted as a friend.
Merry meet and merry part,
Bright the cheeks, and warm the heart.
Mind the Three Fold law you should.
Three times bad and three times good.
When misfortune is enow,
Wear thy blue star on thy brow.
True in Love ever be,
Lest thy lover's false to thee.
Eight words the Wiccan Rede fulfill An

Ye Harm None, do as ye will

We can see by just a brief look at man's history that chaos has reigned and the nature of man is one of greed. I would suggest that all practitioners obtain as much knowledge of history and how things occurred as a basis to their own practices. As a recommended study with more in-depth knowledge, read *Pagans and Christians* by Robin Labe Fox, Alfred A. Knopf, 1986. It is now time to start your journey into the Art of the Ancient Craft. Understand your results from your practice will vary based on experience. To begin, you must learn the things pertaining to nature and the nature which is magic. Therefore it is suggested that you gain as much knowledge as you can and read other books on your topics of your interests and try a simple test to see where your talents are best suited. Remember that wisdom comes with the acquisition of knowledge, not the hypocrisy of man.

Chapter Three

Magical Workings-Nature and her Abundance

One of the first things that the human race was taught by the watchers or spirits of creation was herbal lore. Each plant and tree and the uses was recited as they walked among the forest and fields. It was an important knowledge for man to know how to use magical herbs to call the spirits as well as healing the weak human bodies. It is clear that Men, being a frail creature, needed the aide of these creatures of light who are also called angels and guardians. We all know how frail this flesh is. It gets overheated in the summer and cold in the winter. Too much stress on some parts can break or strain bones. Since the Creator made us for a specific purpose, he also taught us the use of things that would care our earthy flesh as well as

our spirits. We all must look at logics at this point. I would infer at this point that the creator made mankind creatures of flesh, blood, and bone so we could do our intended task. As a friend of mine states, "We are merely sensory receptors for the universe."

The reason why we were created with the ability to smell, see, hear, taste and touch is simple. God was that of the universe, the creative entity, always existing in the void that is all things. This wonderful deity needed humans and animals as sensory receivers so he/she too could feel the sensations he had created and that which existed in his domain. Different sets of circumstances are set in our path to watch and gage our reactions. In essence, this is one giant laboratory for the powers that be. Why else would he tempt Eve by placing a snake in the garden? Why would he give the eagle the power to soar and the sight to see a small animal on the earth? Why would this creator fear the human race worshipping other gods or graven images?

The universal creative forces are many and

diverse. It matters not to them on what path we travel as long as we are heading towards the goal of being one with them. The only true path is the path that leads to enlightenment of the essence that is the soul, which shall be perceived by the individual and manifest itself in creation.

When mankind fell from grace in the eyes of the creator, again this deity devolved them into the state of primitive man. This was to evaluate cause and effect on his creation. Just before the time of Adam and Eve. We have heard this called the first age of man and the Biblical text seems to support this theory. The only problem with Biblical Text, it was translated by man, written by mankind, thus Christianity is the religion of Man.

At first I'm positive that there was no distinction of sexes to primitive man. Each person was equal and the hunting and gathering was equally shared. Primitive man's primary goal was to seek shelter and find sustenance. In those creative beings minds, I'm also certain to watch the development was a great task. They watched as man rekindled the spark and connection with them.

Only as society re-developed were there words to distinguish and express ideals. One would concur in the earliest of days; after the regression of man, the concept of male and female would be the earliest concepts to reawaken. After all, the entire sexual urge in humans is so great that it starts wars and makes nations crumble.

Male and female are words created to distinguish persons and concepts. Perhaps they saw the different body parts but had no words for it or usage. Perhaps the hairier one was stronger. It would appear that the endorphins and scents are different but that's about it. The origins of the word male in earliest times come from several sources, according to Webster Dictionary; Male is first seen in Old French masle, from Latin masculus, from mas 'a male'.

Female however is a basic derivative of the word male. In the 14th century, the word "female" appeared in English with such spellings as femel, femelle, and female. In English, the similarity in form and sound between the words female and male led people to use only the female spelling.

This closeness also led to the belief that female comes from or is somehow related to male. However, apart from the influence of male on the modern spelling of female, there is no link between the origins of the two words. In the Middle English; female means "a girl or woman", an altered form of femel, femelle (same meaning), from early French femelle and Latin femella, both meaning "a girl or woman", from earlier Latin femella "a young woman, girl", from femina "woman". So where is the link? Why is it believed the females more the material of witches? Why are most witch matters associated with females only? The male counterpart was called a Warlock, which actually means a great warrior. This essentially has nothing to do with magic until recent times. I can only assume that woman was thought to be weaker and easier led by the Christian devil. In truth, these creatures are equal even in the number of sexual genitalia, it is merely configured different.

Please bear in mind this is all speculative, and follows only a logical course. We can deduce that woman took the control of power because they

are able produce life or separate into another being, a baby. De-evolved or Pre historic man followed the ways of the animals and copied them. I am almost certain urination led to the notice of a difference. Then the differences interlocked just as a piece in a puzzle and this was good to both, thus sex occurred. With copulation came the consequences. The first Pregnancy and the first birth then took place. Primitive man was an observer of cause and effect only. Primitive woman probably was not intelligent enough at this point to comprehend that she had created a new life. She simply understood that something came from here; therefore a part of her she must always protect. One can deduce that it was basic instinct placed in her by the Mother Goddess of the Universe who we see as the creator.

Just imagine that you are the first woman about to give birth. The first birth! After many changes in the moon, the tides are in. You are growing bigger and bigger as time passes. With each moon, you feel movement inside and are in awe. Perhaps you have eaten a forbidden fruit and

it has made you ill. You have become so big that the hunt is a distant memory. Perhaps you are hungry because you can't hunt as well. The stronger male that you coupled with is now being kind and feeding you from his hunt. Maybe he must because of the limited male and female ratio and this is the only way he can couple.

The full moon is causing havoc on a system that's made of mostly water. You have been lying in pain for many weeks and feeling a movement for many months. The others have shunned you because you have become so big, you can't care for yourself. The cave is in total darkness, just the flames of the fire and the sweat beads on your forehead. Several sharp pains and you feel your lower regions part, instinct tells you to push. After a few hours, something has fallen out of you. You lapse in a half conscious state and hear the noise that this lump of flesh is making. You look at this small clone of a person. You may even believe it's the inner you. Perhaps you think that it may want to go back. Perhaps you try to put it back inside you, but it is too large now.

As you carry it while you walk around looking for food, it finds a breast that has been swollen for a long time. The sensation is very pleasant, it feeds. Others in the group are afraid. They look at you in awe because you who were one have now become two. Some begin to worship you for this great act that has taken place, while others fear you. After a few weeks of caring for this part of you, you decide it would be easier to detach it as it grows. You chew off the umbilical cord or perhaps it just falls off. As the days and years pass, more of the smaller of the species (female) start going through this same process. Out of each, another person comes into being. The male or bigger of the species becomes aware that you now can create a new person for the tribe. A cycle has begun that will lead to civilization flourishing as we know it. You can give life and so can all of your kind, thus man becomes possessive of their life giver. They take pride in their offspring and thus the family unit, the simplest form of society is created.

Let's now look at this simple act and how a

secret society of life and of the life giver would once again evolve. She had to be cleverer in caring for herself and that part which had come from her. Instead of the hunt, berries and grains become more a staple part of her life. Her responsibilities for these smaller humans caused her to be more cautious until they could care for themselves. She began to develop a keener knowledge of plants and herbs. The ones to eat and the ones that helped in cures.

She began to explore and develop more knowledge of the natural world around her. She begins to rediscover the forgotten knowledge of the Angels and creative forces.

Perhaps it was a hunting accident that caused her to discover the use of herbs and things of stone and nature. Perhaps in gratitude for her assistance or fear he became her mate. For our journey of the ancients and their magic, we will assume that after trial and error, she found plants that would stop blood flow or cause a desired effect. Thusly we start our education, as every person practicing the craft must, with Herbal Magic.

By definition the use of plant, animal or mineral substances found in nature and presumed to have innate powers and classified as natural magic. When using the herbs and plants of nature in the craft it is classified as Herbal Magic. This type developed into the modern pharmacies of today. Shhhh! don't tell Eli Lilly that his company is practicing witchcraft. Herbal Magic is Earth Magic and one of the twelve powers granted by those beings of creation. If this is the power granted to you, you shall automatically be able to identify plants and their use as a basic instinct.

This is the most basic practice of the craft that does not contain intricate and complex ritual practices. Usually when gathering herbs, a prayer of thanks is spoken to the deity or spirit associated with that particular plant and it is done. It can also be noted that the combination of herbals works differently for each person. Herbs are used in almost every ritual in one form or another, but herbs have their own power and uses based on nature and medicinal qualities. Generally, those dedicated to herbal magic, are not practitioners of

any other magical realm but can manifest talents in other areas.

Practitioners, who are true herbal practitioners, generally do not have strong protective magic and usually must seek out a group for higher protection. These practitioners are very prone to psychic attack and spiritual domination because they are so close to the natural world. Their main power lies in their herbal knowledge therefore protect them and let them live among you. They will become the healers of your coven. They have great earth magic and as such are powerful entities. The great Gods and Goddesses of creation and of the earthly domain are their protectors and chief deities.

It has been proven in the scientific world that these oils and aromas of herbals have the power to trigger emotional changes in the brain, including the release of Endorphins which can produce gratifying sensations and a sense of wellbeing. These sensations can unlock those parts of our mind that contain great power. Herbs were also the foundations of our modern pharmaceuticals and

drugs. Did you know, in nature there is a cure for every known and unknown ailment as well as a way to supplicate the God and Goddess directly. Like the wise ones say, “It is better to catch a fly with honey than with shit.”

From cave paintings, it is clear that prehistoric people of the regression, used herbs and the plants in many ways. The knowledge and use of herbs and plants would follow us throughout history and develop into the modern medical practices of today. In the practice of the craft, herbal magic is always used in conjunction with all your rituals and spells. We use herbal magic in everyday life sometimes not knowing it. We use it in the food we prepare and the medicines we take. Our creator placed on the earth every item to improve our lives and heal our body and soul. Herbs have been classified for centuries with symbolic “magical” properties and edible foodstuffs. When we look at simple items such as pepper, sage, and coffee or tobacco we never think of herb magic these days as we did in the days of magic.

We would however caution you that Herbs could be very toxic and deadly as well as useful. This can result from the plant itself, the combination of plants or even its growing or its handling. You must never ingest herbs that are not produced and grown as food. Only after you have a clear and concise knowledge of herbs and their interactions should you attempt to heal with herbs. Most states also have license that you must first obtain if you wish to use herbs for the general population. So please do not use this knowledge in the wrong way and to practice medicine or herb medicine if you are not licensed to do so. Using herbs as a poison should also never been done lightly. Also make sure if you are not growing your own, the herbs that you use are pure and of good quality.

Herbs can be brewed, burned, sprinkled steeped and used as oil. They are used in charms alone or with other items. When brewing herbs remember that some are poison and you should not breathe the fumes. Be extremely cautious. Always use a well-ventilated area. When stuffing a poppet

with herbs and powders it is a possibility in some cases to cause a reaction that will not bring forth good results. Remember herbal magic is earth magic and the spirits of the earth guard its secrets well. The combinations of many herbs such as powders and salts for use in casting circles or “medicine or power painting” can bring fantastic results. When herbs are added to spell casting they will bring a natural connection to the desired results. But again you are cautioned to never go against the natural order and use of the herb or plant in a sacred rite.

Now it is time to familiarize you with the herbs used and their many uses. Please bear in mind that you must always get your herbs from a reputable dealer and when using those you harvest, please use caution in the times and ways you gather them. Make sure your ritual items for gathering are clean and free of any negative influences. Most practitioners have separate knives and trowels for collecting their herbs and they are used for nothing else. We will tell you how later in the book.

In this book, we will merely scratch the

surface of herbs and their usage. For Further readings on herbals, and a must for any serious student, purchase a copy of “The Complete Book of Incense, Oils & Brews; and Cunningham’s Encyclopedia of Magickal Herbs, both by Scott Cunningham. We will now begin our journey into the magic world of herbs. With herbal magic it is good to have only tools that you use for gathering and storing magical herbs but for the most part you will not need special equipment to do herbal magic. If you find that you are performing a great deal of herbal magic and wish to have specific tools for magical use you may want to consider purchasing or collecting some of the following items for dedicated use:

A coffee grinder or mortar and pestle for pulverizing herbs.

Some labels and permanent marker for jars.

Colored cotton cloth for sachets and amulet bags

Epsom salts and rock salt for making bath salts

Wooden, Glass, or stone spoon for mixing.

A glass or stone bowl to blend in.

Cheese cloth and coffee filters for straining

Eyedroppers for blending oils

Apricot kernel, sesame or almond oil for oil

base

An assortment of large and small colored

jars and vials.

Once you have all the things you need to harvest and store you are ready to start your collection. You may use the rest of this chapter as your guide and be sure to buy a good herbal dictionary. Most practitioners will have a good selection of herbs even though their talent may lie in a different area.

One of the best household items that a witch can use to assist in a cure or mixture is Vinegar. We're not sure what vinegar did for Jack's head, but this cleaning superhero is definitely an environmentalist's best friend. Vinegar can cause a bruise to vanish in a matter of a few days by rubbing it directly to the skin. It can lower

cholesterol. Add baking soda and you have a combination that will take care of almost all your cleaning needs. Medicinal uses of jacks Patch tells us that with the combination of brown paper, it can act as a coagulate and possible aid to head injuries. Vinegar kills some three hundred known germs/bugs, and is an excellent antibiotic and weight loss aide. Mix it with raw honey, and reap the benefits of both. Bacteria don't grow in honey. You can even put it on cuts, abrasions and burns. Both the Romans and the Egyptians used this remedy extensive and many jars have been found to contain the residue of this mixture. Two tablespoons of raw apple cider vinegar a day will help to make you healthy and boost your immune system. So I guess the saying an apple a day really can hold true when its apple cider vinegar.

Acicia is an herb used in charms for Protection and to enhance Psychic Powers. Use the gum to cover inflamed surfaces and decrease swelling. Gum Acacia is highly nutritious. During the time of the gum harvest, the Moors of the desert are said to live almost entirely on it, and it has

been proved that 6 oz. is sufficient to support an adult for twenty-four hours. The Bushman Hottentots have been known in times of scarcity to support themselves on it for days. In many cases of disease, it is considered that a solution of Gum Arabic and water may for a time sustain patient and he will need no food or drink. In America we must be very careful not to get hold of false Acacia. This false herb comes from the Locust Tree.

If you feel nervous all the time and have the thoughts that your life is out of control, here's a simple herbal that will help you gain control. Make you a drink of equal amounts by weight of valerian root, skull cap, chamomile, sweet hops and a little anise. The anise is for taste. An ounce of each will be sufficient. A quarter ounce or less ought to do for the anise. Grind it all up, Corse for tea or fine for putting in a capsule. Feed in just enough anise to make the taste tolerable, as valerian root tastes like an old tire. The cheapest place to buy herbs is in a shop that sells loose herbs, and you weigh out what you want. The best place to acquire herbs is harvested from nature or out of your own herb

garden. If you do not have that luxury, any will do but it is preferred to use a practitioner who is familiar with the ritual gathering of herbs. Sweeten this tea with honey to taste and you will sleep well and wake up feeling fresh and able to deal with the troubles of the day.

Romans used to feed this "Warrior's Potion" to their soldiers to calm them down before battle. Take a dose, and in twenty minutes, you won't be nervous at all. The Romans used to throw a handful of silver coins into their water barrels to prevent getting sick from drinking bad water. They did it to appease the goddess of water. Today we know that Silver Halides kill germs.

It is said that garlic is the witches cure all herb. It can lower blood pressure and drive away vampires and other evil spirits. Other names for this herb are Ajo is Spain, Poor Man's treacle, Stinkweed. It is a Masculine herb, ruled by the planet Mars and governed by the element Fire. The goddess associated mostly with garlic is Hecate. It is used for Protection, Healing, Exorcism, Lust, and Anti-Theft. Garlic is mostly known as a

cooking herb. Pregnant women and persons with "hot and fiery" temperaments should avoid overuse of garlic. It will only make things worse. In the home, braids of garlic guard against evil, repel thieves, and turn away the envious. Garlic has always been the traditional sacrifice to the goddess Hecate. It is still used to absorb diseases. When evil spirits are about, bite into garlic to send them away, or sprinkle powdered garlic on the floor. This herb is one of the most diverse cooking herbs used today.

Digitalis comes from the foxglove plant. Natural aspirin is decocted out of willow bark and the female hormone, "Progesterone" comes from yams. Herbal pain killers are made from the extracts of certain plants like hemlock, deadly night shade, tomato greens, carrot greens, castor beans, apple cores, peach pits, oleander leaves and simple stuff like that. Besides lots of medical and emotional health values, they are also used in magical rites to attract love, wealth, and to summons spirits. The more you know of herbs the healthier your life can be.

Adam & Eve Roots is the herb of love spells. It is ruled by the planet Venus and governed by Water. It is used for spells of Love and Happiness. Adam & Eve Root are also called the Putty Root. Using this Herb in spells is simple, after the ritual is completed; carry the two roots (Male root and female root) in a small bag to attract love. Once love is found separate them. Give one to your new love and keep the other so your hearts will purr when you are together. There are many love spells and potions. It seems that Love spells were the most popular spells of the ages. It is my extreme opinion that Love spells should never be performed. If this is a must, use the ones you find in this book as a guide and then create your own. Yours will be more effective since you have a better connection with your desired results. Casting any spell that is intended to change the will of another is to be used with great caution. If you cast for another, then make sure they know what they ask.

African violet not only is a beautiful flower but its uses in rituals and offerings are numerous.

You should gather the African violet, because of its abundance throughout the world. In many opening rituals and casting of spells it is used as an offering for the Goddess. The African violet is the plant associated with the Goddess, Spirituality, and Protection. African violet is also ruled by the Angel Eiael. He is the angel with dominion over the protection of occult sciences and longevity. When Eiael is evoked the invocator must recite the 4th verse of Psalm 36 to appease and praise him. Solomon was a favorite of the angels. It is Solomon's Psalms that are used in many occult practices and invocations for both protections and summoning.

The use of the herb, Agaric is associated with fertility. Agaric is a Fungi (Mushroom). One must be extremely careful in using these in potions for ingestion since some are highly poisonous. Edible Fungi have a pleasant mushroom odor. Others with a faint anise-like scent or no particular odor at all might be poison. Fungi with bad or rotten smells should be avoided for foods and potions. It is a suspicious sign in poison fungi if

when being cut or bruised they turn deep blue or greenish. Also avoid those that have a bitter taste or a milky substance inside. It would be very wise to get a guide to these fungi before collecting if you are not familiar.

Agrimony is sometimes called Churches Steeple when spells and invocations are written. It is used for Protection and to induce a dreamless sleep. It is used as protection against those that would do you harm. It is one of the ingredients in counter spells and was used in driving away evil spirits. Agrimony, when dried, has an apricot scent and can be used in sachets and potpourri. Use this herb in all protection sachets and spells, also to banish negative energies and spirits. Use this in herb in rituals to returns spells to sender.

Here is a simple return spell when you know that someone has done you evil or injustice.

Make a poppet of black velvet cloth, on the night of Mars in the hour ruled by the sign of those that have done you an injustice. Under the waxing moon, call on the spirits of the underworld for assistance. Inside the poppet, fill it with Agrimony,

mustard seeds, piece of clay shaped around a bamboo skeleton in a human figure, and small pebbles. Bamboo has always been used for Protection, Luck, Hex-Breaking, and Wishes. Many practitioners make things from bamboo under the moon hold this poppet so the moon goddess can shine on it and sanctify your act. Say the following:

Hail the Goddess who shines from above.

I come to you in perfect trust and love.

She who is the protector of all living things.

Guard your servant from the evil that
(person's name) brings.

Protect me oh goddess from the harm of the
spell

Undo his/her evil and return it three fold

Bind their spirit to this poppet, in my hands I
hold.

In your minds eyes visualize that your poppet is the person who has done you the injustice. Concentrate on the harm that has been done. Place the poppet over sage to purify your act and state in a forceful voice, "Return to the sender of this evil

act, for with the spirits of creation I have made my pact". You must keep the poppet in secret until you are sure that the spell has returned the evil deed to the sender. Then you must burn it over an open flame of Ash with a ritual of thanks to the powers of the universe for hearing and granting your pleas. As we see in the above spell the Ash Tree is very important. We use ash wood to burn our poppet to invoke the power of the sun to dispel the binding and protect us from further acts from the evil doer.

Ash is ruled by the Sun and was one of the Druids sacred trees. It is used in rituals of Protection, Prosperity, and Sea Rituals. Ash is the sacred world tree of the Teutons, known as Yggdrasil. The Ash is sacred to Poseidon and Woden. When the world began, the Ash is considered to be the father of trees. The Ash is the tree of sea power, or of the power resident in water. Weather Witches make their staffs and wands from the ash tree and decorate them with all things and elements of water and the Gods associated with Water.

Ash wood makes a traditional Yule log. Ash

wands are good for healing, general and solar magic. Put fresh ash leaves under your pillow to stimulate psychic dreams and prosperity. Special guardian spirits reside in the Ash; this makes it excellent for absorbing sickness. The spirally carved druidical wand was made of Ash for this exact purpose. It was carved with the symbols of alchemy and represented the angels and demons of the mortal soul.

Ash may represent the sun, but Alder is called the tree of Fire. In the legendary battle of the trees, the Alder fought in the very front line. It is described as the "battle witch" of all woods, the tree that fought the hardest. From the alder, you can make three different dyes, red from its bark, green from its flowers, and brown from its twigs; this symbolizes the elements of fire, water and earth. The Alder wood is the wood of the witches. Ritual Musical Instruments may be made of this wood to summon and control the four winds. To prepare the wood for use, beat the bark away with a willow stick while projecting your wishes into it. The Alder is a token of resurrection. When you make

wands and other tools with Alder wood, concentrate it with virgin Almond Oil.

Almonds are used for Money, Prosperity, and Wisdom. Almonds must be chewed well and slowly to reap their full benefits. The whole raw almond had been described as a cancer preventative. Caution: Almonds contain hydrocyanic acid and can be toxic if eaten in large amounts. Burn the wood for money, riches and wisdom. Almond wood makes a nice ritual wand. Sweet Almond Oil is one of the primary carrier oils for ritual and anointing blends. Anointing your tools with almond oil will strengthen it and bring fruitful results. Almonds are a Ritual gift to a loved one to symbolize true love transcending death. One of my favorite spells with this herb is a spell of love. When you are totally in love with a man who is near but seems to be afraid to commit, give him almonds in his meal and a massage with almond oils and rose oil. As we all know, Rose's are the traditional Flower of Love.

Rose is not just for Love. I consider this as another must for any practitioners shelves. This

flower or herbal is used is so many rituals and spells. When dealing with this colorful herb and flower, great care should be taken in the color. Roses are used in all forms of magic Love, Psychic Powers, Healing, Love, Divination, Luck, and Protection. Placing roses at the table was once used to assure confidences and secrets. The Briar Rose is known as Wild Rose, Sweet Briar, Hop Fruit, or Briar. This variety is used for clairvoyant dreams, steep two teaspoons fresh or dried rose petals in one cup of boiling water. Cover and let stand five minutes. Drink at bedtime. Burn the petals with love incense to strengthen love spells. The Dog Rose is associated with pure love and femininity. The Rose is a Goddess herb belonging to Venus and the Water element. Rose oil is used in formulas designed to attract love, confer peace, stimulate sexual appetites, and enhance beauty. Burn as incense for: Healing, Health, Love, Luck, Creativity, Balance, Anointing, Divination, Clairvoyance, Protection, Psychic Awareness.

The Rose is used in the following Love Spell. Please be careful with this one because it's

a potent spell.

You will need the following: A charred stick (found or made), Dried rose petals, Piece of red or parchment or cloth, A Red Candle & Heatproof container. Using the charred part of the stick as you would a pencil, draw two hearts linked together on the parchment or cloth as you visualize yourself enjoying a satisfying relationship. Hold the rose petals in your projective hand & send fiery (lusty) loving energies into them. Sprinkle the petals over the linked hearts. Do this with as much power and intent as possible. Fold the papers corners in towards you to the center of the parchment or cloth as you turn the paper clockwise with the petals inside. You should have a smaller version of your rectangle when you are done. Still visualizing, throw the package into a fire or light it in the flame of a red candle & throw into a heat proof container. As it burns, the power is released. The winds will carry it to your intended love and within ten days you will see results, if it was done properly. You may carry the ashes with you in a small vial or pouch if you desire until you find that

special someone. We use the wonderful powerful rose as your first meditation practice. Try this and see how ready you are to continue your journey into the spiritual realm. Find a calm time when you can sit uninterrupted in silence. You do not need to spiritually cleanse with any cleansing herb, incense or oil. This may be very distractive. Close your eyes and place all things out of your mind, turning the space you see in your mind into a black and void place.

From this void place, picture a green stem of a small plant coming from the blackness. There is only you and the sprout in this void of time and space. As you watch make the sprout grow into a plant. Watch the leaves come on stem in its brilliant green color. As the leaves develop, you can see a bud develop and grow. Now in this black place there is a simple rose plant. As you concentrate, Can you smell the greenery of the plant? Now make the flower bloom into a beautiful rose. Smell the rose and remember its fresh scent. Look at its brilliant color, how perfect the petals. What color is your rose? Was this exercise easy or

hard? Don't worry if you cannot do this at first, it will come with practice. Never give up, but continue daily. Not only will this ease stress and tension, it will create a habit of visualizations that is needed and required for any form of higher magic.

Now would be a very good time to grab you some chamomile Tea and relax form this deep state of conscious awareness. Chamomile has long been used as a relaxing agent and has many other uses. It is a Masculine Herb ruled by the Sun or Venus and governed by Water. It is sometimes referred to as Ground Apples. Chamomile should be called the most versatile of the herbs. It can be used as meditation incense. Use this herb for centering your being, protection, peace, healing, love or money. No Herbal stock is complete without Chamomile. You can use chamomile for many ailments. It is used for both internal and external ailments. Its great for the digestion, fevers. In a poultice it is the best remedy for burns with no scaring. It is also a sedative used in teas to help you relax. Chamomile is so essential to the

practitioner that it can even be used as an insect repellent. It's a good hair rinse and planting it in your garden can bring you great success as well as repel snakes.

When sprinkled around the house it removes hexes, curses and spells. It can be burned or added to prosperity bags to increase money. My favorite recipe for health and success starts with a good cup of Chamomile tea sweetened with honey and sprinkled with a little allspice.

Allspice is used in spells of Money, Luck, and Healing. It is a Masculine herb ruled by the planet Mars and governed by Fire. You should burn Allspice for rituals involving prosperity, courage, healing/health, luck, determination, magical power, energy, and strength. Our spell that uses Allspice for money is simple to do.

You will need some Allspice, Bergamot, strands of Wheat, a Clover, two green candles and the piece of Topaz. Call on the Angel of Fire, Azer to burn the night clear and protect you from poverty. Say a small prayer asking for your desires. Cast a magic circle and invoke the angels

to protect you. Call on the undines and the salamanders, guardians of fire and water elements. As the wind blows, there shall be the spirits of two each guarding the east, west, north and south. You are ready to enter a magical state of invocation.

Place the topaz on your alter in the middle of the Green candles. Light the candles and say:

Oh great and Powerful fire elements

Reveal yourself to us in our hour of need.

In utter poverty, your servant bleeds

Burn poverty away with the swiftness of fire.

Take the strand of wheat and say:

“Like this many grains within this wheat may the waters bring me a bounty of wealth that I may plant the seeds that will feed my desires. So Mote It Be.”

Take the allspice and sprinkle it over the topaz. Say

“Great spirit of Fire Azer, I call upon you to guard my wealth that this stone shall bring, I give to you the spice of life and hope that you grant me the material needs that I desire, cause the spirits to be merciful unto me and grant that I may no longer live in poverty.”

Say a prayer and dismiss the spirits on the southern winds. Let the candles burn to completion and as the fire of the Salamanders grow dim so shall your poverty. Take the Topaz and guard it with care for it is your stone of wealth and happiness.

For ages it has been believed that the Topaz brings happiness, wealth and honor, improve intellect, calm the mind and aid psychic development. It promotes creativity. For mental balance, strengthening the blood vessels, helping circulation, varicose veins, menstrual pains, liver problems, nervousness, insomnia and for improving appetite. It comes in a variety of colors, usually Golden yellow or aqua blue. This stone is like a battery if one needs recharging like a battery. To recharge it sprinkle it with allspice and place it

in the sun for about four hours.

We also can use Allspice in many other spells. It seems to be a catchall herbal and a great gift of the Creator. A Combination of Allspice, Cinnamon and Pumpkin bring warmth to the hearth and home. I guess that's why when there's a Pumpkin pie in the oven, the house seems to be totally in harmony.

Bergamot is primarily used for money and protective rituals. Add the distilled bouquet to your bathwater for these purposes. Another catchall herbal is Aloe or Aloe Vera.

Aloe is used for Protection and Luck. Aloe is grown in the house as a houseplant. It guards against evil influences and prevents household accidents. Aloe has healing agents in it like no other plant. You can seal wounds with its thick, clear inner gel. Simply break off a small piece and rub across a cut or scrape for almost instant relief. Aloe is used to treat burns, skin rashes, and insect bites, as well as chafed nipples from breastfeeding, when applied to the affected area externally. Internally it can be used to keep the

bowels functioning smoothly, or when there is an impaction, although it can cause intestinal cramping when taken internally, and there are other herbs that do this job better. It aids in healing wounds by drawing out infection, and preventing infection from starting. The fresh gel is best to use, rather than "stabilized" gels found in the stores. The fresh gel was used by Cleopatra to keep her skin soft and young. In Africa, the aloe is hung over houses and doors to bring good luck and drive away evil.

Angelica is used for Exorcism, Protection, Healing, and Visions. It is also known as Angel's Food. Crushed leaves in car interiors reduce travel nausea. The oil is distilled from the root or seeds. It is used in infusion or tincture, the root raises body temperature and promotes digestion, making it an ideal herb for older folks. According to legend, Archangel Gabriel revealed the powers of this Nordic plant to the Benedictine monks hence its Latin name *Angelica Archangelica*. Angelica was the only medicinal plant that was brought from Scandinavia to Central and Southern Europe.

During the middle Ages it was commonly grown and harvested in monasteries. Angelica is a good herbal tea to take for colic, gas, indigestion, hepatitis, and heartburn. It is useful to add in remedies for afflictions of the respiratory system, as well as liver problems and digestive difficulties. Angelica Archangelica promotes circulation and energy in the body. It is often used to stimulate the circulation in the pelvic region and to stimulate suppressed menstruation. Grow it in your garden as a protection for garden and home. The root is often used as a protective amulet, and has been used to banish evil by burning the leaves. It is also used to lengthen life, and is used in protection against diseases, as well as to ward off evil spirits. Adding it to a ritual bath will break spells and hexes. It has often been used to ward off evil spirits in the home.

To harvest and grow your own Angelica, you will need rich, moist garden soil in partial shade. It prefers wet bottomlands and swamps, and prefers the cooler northern regions to grow best. This is the only way you will know if your

angelica has been harvested according to proper ritual and on the proper nights. This is real important when using this for ritual and invocations. Angelica is the food of the Angels and thusly got its name Angelica. It is necessary in invocations of some of the more powerful guardians. Other Foods of the Gods and Angels are Apples and Apricots.

Apples are known as one of the many Druids sacred trees. Sometimes it is called the Silver Bough. These fruits are used in spells and rituals of Love, Healing, Garden Magic, and Immortality. Wiccan altars are often piled high with apples during Samhain as offerings for the dead.

The apple has long been used in spells of love. The blossoms are added to love sachets, brews and incenses, and they are infused in melted pink wax, then strained out to make candles suitable to use in spells for attracting love. Use apple cider in place of blood where it is called for in old recipes or strawberry juice. Apples and apple blossoms are symbolic of love, healing and immortality.

Burn apple blossoms as incense, wear the perfume, and make them into herb candles for a hand fasting ceremony. It is usually the apple we think of as the fruit of the Garden of Eden, but this is probably not true. In addition, who can forget the old adage, "An apple a Day" Spells with Apples are numerous. My favorite is a Love charm.

Take an apple and place it under your pillow. The next morning, place it in cool water that has been blessed. Just before bed, eat the apple; core, seeds, and peel. You will dream of your true love.

Bananas are fruity the counterpart to the great apple and used for Fertility, Potency, and Prosperity. They are often part of fertility rituals because of their shape.

A ritual with Apples and bananas can be a very potent love ritual to be practiced by two people. It is a very High form of Sex Magic and should never be done in groups.

In a time and place good to both parties, where you can be totally alone and uninterrupted, light seven white candles. Ye shall also light three

red candles. Light sweet smelling incense pleasing to both, and run a bath. Place lots of rose petals in the bath, for the Goddess comes to the aroma of Rose. Purify the water with a ritual of cleansing and greet your partner with the threefold kiss. Begin to come to the state in which you were born into the world and disrobe. Your partner should do the same.

Ask your love, "How do you come to be here?"

Their reply should be, "With perfect love and perfect trust for my mate, the god and goddess".

There then should be silence from this point on as you bathe each other in the cool water and rose petals. Each person should start at the top of the head and wash slowly to the feet and every place in between. As you bathe each other visualize the negative influences going away from each other's body and the essence of the rose petals and the great ones entering into their place.

When the bathe is over, sit facing each other and looking deeply into each other's eyes, picture

the thoughts of the other. Cut an apple into four sections, he shall eat a section and place an intimate kiss in a very desirable place of her choosing. With a banana split in the middle, she shall place it around his genitals and eat there from. Begin to caress each other with sweet smelling oils that are pleasing to both. Let the Goddess and God enter your bodies and become one with each other in the total bliss of union. When you feel that the union is complete, again bathe each other and dismiss the goddess and god. Take the rose petals and place them in the earth as a gift to the god and goddess.

This will heighten your experiences and bond the two together so they can work more effectively within the craft. The sexual energies from the union and the trust that is shared will be amazing and you can feel the power grow between the two. This ritual should only be performed one on one and is generally performed by the Priest and priestess of the craft. It acts as a bonding of the members to the leaders of the craft. After the spiritual bonding it is always good to grant each

other the gift of a stone or a signet according to their need and astrological sign. Another very appropriate gift to the coven member if the High Priestess is doing this ritual is a magical herbal bag made of the color and herb of the practitioners desires and needs. In a small bag, place Anise seeds and a personal item of the practitioner to make the mixture personal.

Anise seeds are used to avert all evil. The main use of this herb is protection. In ancient Roman times, anise seeds were baked into a cake that was served at the end of the wedding feast. This was believed to purify the union and protect it from the evil gods of chaos. Anise used in ritual magic is thought to entice spirits to aid in spells, divination, psychic awareness, and youth, in a pillow it wards off nightmares. Another dream herbal is Asafoetida.

Asafoetida is also known as Stinking gum. It is used for prophetic dreams, exorcism, and protection. Worn in a bag around the neck, asafoetida dispels diseases and evils of all kinds. It repels evil spirits! Add a clove of garlic to

enhance the effect. Asafetida is a classic herb for exorcism and purification rites. Use it to smudge a ritual space or alter with smoke. Asafetida is a powerful herb and its fragrance has been known to cause vomiting. Use with Care and in a well-ventilated area. When placing it in a medicine bag, use very small amounts and always with a sweet smelling flower such as Bachelors Buttons or Lilac to help the overpowering scents.

Bachelor's Buttons is used for Love, Success, Healing. It comes in a variety of colors and can be used as ornaments of your alter as well as a nice garden plant. This wonderful plant is ruled by Venus and Saturn. Its main elemental charge is water. Bachelor's Buttons are particularly sacred on Floralia which occurs near Beltane. The flower was a favorite of Cyanus, a devotee of Flora, from who it takes its name. Its genus was derived from Chiron, perhaps one of the most famous centaurs, who taught mankind healing arts. If the flower petals are pressed, they express a blue juice. While this is not suitable as a dye (it fades), it may be used as a natural ink for your

book of shadows. A bachelor's button flower should be worn over the heart to attract the love of a man.

For love divination, carry a flower in your pocket. It will lose or retain its freshness according to the success of your charms pursuits. People who have cornflower blue eyes will find special protection for their eyes in this plant. Filtered through three layers of blue linen and consecrated under a full moon with a moonstone, a wash of bachelor's button flowers may be used to bathe the eyes to increase clairvoyance. Though called cornflower, bachelor's buttons are actually antithetical to the growth of corn. It uses up the nutrients in the earth at a rapid rate. It was also called hurtsickle because in the days of hand reaping, the tough stem blunted the reaper's sickle. For these reasons, it might be best to avoid any combinations with corn or harvest spells.

The Moonstone is used in incantations and spells of success, inspiration and calmness, for reconciling parted lovers, and balancing emotions and attracting good things. To ensure a good crop

hung it from a fruit tree in your garden. Moonstone is a good stone for travelers. In India this was regarded to be a lucky gem if given to a bride by her groom. So make sure that the bride has one in any hand fasting. It is used to cleanse all charkas. This stone is helpful for dropsy and water retention. The Peach colored moonstone is best for comforting the soul.

White moonstone for balance, the blue variety is considered the best of all. This stone is charged by the light of the moon. Rainbow Moonstone Assists in carrying rainbows into one's life. This mineral operates on different levels having itself a mirror within itself to all cycles. One can see what was and what will be in respect to oneself with this stone. When used in conjunction with the herbal balm of Gilead and Others it will Aid in seeing things seen and unseen in their true light. Use the following spell with moonstone to attract love.

You will need a pink candle, a white candle, some cinnamon and a moonstone. Project all the love you can find and charge the candles with love.

You can anoint them with Rose oil and burn jasmine incense for a greater effect. Don't picture a certain person that you wish to love and be loved by, just see yourself happy and with somebody.

Place the candles on your alter, the pink one to the left and the white one to the right. Cast a circle of protection and light the candles. Place the moonstone between the candles. Invite the Goddess of Love to join you with an invocation of the goddess chant. Next, sprinkle the cinnamon in a figure-eight pattern around the two candles. As you sprinkle the cinnamon, speak these words aloud:

"Oh, Great Goddess of the light,
Bring me happiness, true and bright!
May a new love so true come to me!
As I will it, so mote it be!"

Thank the Goddess with a gift of incense and close the circle. Do not put the candles out but let them burn away drawing with them the love that is destined to be your mate.

Balm of Gilead is used like Roses in spells of Love, Manifestations, Protection, and Healing. It is especially helpful to ailments of the urinary

tract. A tincture of them is useful for complaints of the chest, stomach, and kidneys, and for rheumatism and scurvy. With lard (pigs' fat) or other starter oils they are useful as an external application in bruises, and swellings. In ointments they are inferior to paraffin as a preventive of rancidity.

The herb Basil is another good herb to have on hand and ready for use with many spells and rituals. It's not only a good spice for cooking but a powerful herb. Because it is a consumable it should be used in potions for ingestion. Basil is used for Love, Exorcism, Wealth, Flying, and Protection. Other names used for Basil are, Alahaca, American Dittany, Joseph's Wort, Witches Herb, and Felsien. Basil is a Masculine herb, ruled by Mars and governed by Fire. Basil is used to mend lover's quarrels and in love spells. Basil attracts money and brings good luck to a new home. Use it in rites of exorcism and in the ritual bath. Sprinkle powdered Basil over the heart of your lover to promote fidelity. The scent brings happiness to the home and will protect you in

crowds. Basil can also be used in the summoning of scorpions and the Scorpion God, Scorpius. It is said that Artemis used this herb to summons the scorpions to sting Orion as punishment for his transgressions against her.

Use this Basil spell to disperse and bind an enemy that has done you wrong. You will need Fresh Basil leaves, a small cauldron or fireproof cooking pot, two black candles, and two pieces of blank parchment or unlined paper and a smudging stick or lead pencil.

Cast your circle of protection and invoke the Goddess of Justice. Light the candles and place them on either side of your cauldron. Place the Basil leaves into the cauldron and say, "Oh herb of truth and justice, I call upon your powers to bind those that do me harm".

Now write the name of your enemy on one of the pieces of parchment or unlined paper. Light the article containing the name of your tormentor with the flame of the candle on the left and throw it into the cauldron to burn. Now write the name of your enemy on the other article, parchment or paper and

light it with the flame of the candle on the right. Throw *it* into the cauldron. Wave your right hand over the cauldron in counterclockwise circles and say,

"My enemy is tied and bound"

From ever making an evil sound

My enemy now shall never need

To continue in the ways of his evil deeds

As the wind carries this spell to bind say in

a forceful voice:

(Name of The person) What ye have sown,
that's what ye find.

Repeat the incantation until the papers have burnt out completely or three times, whichever is longer. Take the ashes and the Basil leaves and throw them to the wind to carry to he who you bind. Blow out the candles and thanks the goddess and all the spirits of the air, water, earth and air, and dispel the circle. The ritual is complete and you should have no more trouble from that person.

It is not recommended but if the problem persists, then there are darker spells that are in this book, but be cautious and use them wisely with

permission of the High Priestess.

The herb Barley is used in brewing beers and many cakes and soups, but it's also used for Love, Healing, and Protection. Pearl Barley is the same and used in spells it just means without the husk. Barley cakes are baked at all hand fasting rituals. Barley and Bay Leaves are sacred to Demeter and a favorite herb of the God Pan.

Bay or bay Leaves are ruled by the Sun and Governed by Fire. Bay is also called Bay Laurel. The leaves may be slightly narcotic, and aid digestion when added to soups and stews. Bay leaf and berry tea makes a bath additive that helps the bladder, bowel, and female reproductive organs. The Delphic priestesses used bay leaves to enhance their prophetic powers. The incense and the leaf are said to produce a prophetic trance. Burn for psychic powers, purification; wish magic, exorcism, healing/health, protection, divination, visions, clairvoyance, energy, power, strength, inspiration, wisdom, meditation, defense, and creative word. Put the leaves under your pillow to give inspiration and visions. An herb of the sun,

bay brings the light of summer into the darkest time of the year. Carry the leaf or place in the home to ward off illness and hexes. Carried with a simple bean in a medicine pouch of blue cloth will protect you in travel.

The Bean is an herbal plant of Protection, Exorcism, Wart Charming, Reconciliation, Potency, and Love. Kidney Beans, when bruised and boiled with garlic have cured otherwise incurable coughs. If eaten raw they cause painful severe frontal headache, soreness and itching of the eyeball and pain. The roots are a dangerously narcotic and should not be used unless great care and precautions are taken.

To use the bean is a spell to charm warts you will need a Bean, a string, and cloves oil. Circle the wart with the cloves oil going clockwise. As you circle the wart with your finger, say, "Mighty spirits of air and earth, return this growth to its place of birth. Take the string and tie one end around the bean and the other around the wart. Use the remaining cloves oil to trace a path from the wart to the bean. Do not trace your path from the

bean to the wart but always away from, this way you are charming the wart into the bean. Remove the string when you have said the above seven times and bury the bean. As the bean sprouts in the earth, the wart will be removed and never come back.

Some would say that the above charms effectiveness is due to the cloves which is also used in many rituals and should be a part of any practitioner's herbal cabinet.

Clove is a Masculine herb ruled by the Jupiter and governed by Fire. Wearing an amulet or charm made with cloves will dispel negativity and bind those who speak ill of you. Cloves strung on a red thread can be worn as a protective charm and with a regular string as above help rid one of warts. Use cloves in spells of Money matters, visions, cleansing and purification. It has a mild antiseptic quality for toothaches (chew), or in tea form, it is an expectorant for colds, also good for nausea or vomiting. It is an antibacterial, antiseptic, and analgesic, which means clover can helps prevent disease and infection. A wise witch

burns clover for Wealth, Purification, to ward negative thoughts, or to stop others from gossiping about you. Cloves and Garlic is also used in a spell to help you with weight loss.

Take a piece of cake, cookie, or a chunk of chocolate whichever sweet you are trying to banish from your life. Bury them in a pot of rich dirt. Plant three cloves of garlic on top just under the soil. The garlic cloves will purge you of craving by the time the garlic has grown. The next herb for magical use is Bedstraw/Fragrant. Two kinds of this herb can be found in many parts of the world. They are also called Our Lady's Bedstraw, Yellow Bedstraw, Maid's Hair, Hedge Bedstraw, and Water Bedstraw, Petty Mugget, Cheese Renning, and Cheese Rennet. It was commonly used to curdle milk and color cheese. In magic and spell craft it is used to promote love. Try this simple charm using Bedstraw and cloves as a Love spell.

You will need a drawstring bag, holy consecrated water, A rose quartz, a pink feather, a pink candle, and a fifth cup of cloves. Light the candle and chant the following words:

"Love shall come to me by the powers of three, by my will so shall it be!" At this time anoint the bag with holy water and say, "The bag is sealed and the charm is made."

Carry it with you until you meet the love of your choice.

One of the most infamous herbs of the witches is Belladonna (also known as Deadly Nightshade). This magical herb was used in many assignments. Because of its uses in death Belladonna has gotten a very bad reputation to itself and witches. Belladonna herb is also known as the Devil's Cherries, Naughty Man's Cherries, Black Cherry, Devil's Herb, Great Morel, and Dwayberry. The principal use is for astral projection. Be extremely careful in handling this herb because it is a deadly poison.

Belladonna is a three to five foot tall perennial plant with a leafy, smooth, branched stem. It possesses fuzzy oval shaped leaves that grow to be about eight inches. The leaves growing from the plant the first year of planting are shown to be larger than those of following years.

Belladonna grows bell-shaped flowers of a bluish purple color or a dull red color. The berries that grow after the flowers have left the plant are approximately one half inch in length. They are shiny black or purple in color. Belladonna is native to Europe and Asia. There are several medical uses of belladonna. The name (fair lady) comes from the story of the Italian ladies who would drop the juice in their eyes to enlarge their pupils and make their eyes more dazzling. Atropine, a chemical found in belladonna is used by modern eye doctors to dilate the pupils so they can examine the retina. Two other substances found in belladonna, scopolamine and hyoscyamine, are used in a number of antispasmodics used to treat intestinal disorders like diarrhea, irritable colon, and peptic ulcers. Its name is derived from the Scandinavian Goddess of sleep.

Romans dedicated the plant to the Goddess Bellona, whose priests drank the juice of the berry before sacred rites connected with her worship. When Christianity became the dominant religion, the Goddess Bellona was discarded and the plant

changed from Bellona's Herb to Belladonna. Ostensibly a reference to the Virgin Mary, the French scholar Jules Michelet believed that belladonna had been named after the "good women," The Good Woman being the wise women and witches of the villages. This magical herb was used as part of a flying potion mixed together with baby fat (lard rendered from piglets and lambs) in attaining a higher sphere in astral travel. Instead of Belladonna, I would prefer other herbs such as Dittany of Crete.

Dittany of Crete is an herb used mainly for psychic Manifestations and Astral Projection. Burn this herb for a stronger manifestation of the spirits. Mix with equal parts vanilla, benzoin and sandalwood to make an astral projection incense. The juice of dittany protects you from venomous beasts and acts as a agent against snake and spider bites.

Benzoin is another herb used in astral projection. When reading spells and charms, you will most likely see it listed as Gun Benjamin. The primary ritual uses are Purification and Prosperity.

This herb of purification should be burned in incense to sanctify the ritual area. The scent is also used to attract business when combined with basil, peony or cinnamon. Dilute the essential oil and rub onto the body to increase your personal power. It awakens the conscious mind as well. Burn Benzoin to purify, protect, for prosperity, for astral projection and to increase mental powers.

Another herbs called Culpeper is recommended for headaches and clearing the head before going on a journey of astral projection. The proper name for this herb is Betony. It is the herb of Jupiter. It is the favorite herb of Juno, queen of the gods. In the British Isles, it was associated with deities of Justice. This herb is thrown on the fire at Midsummer to help with purification. It is also considered

protective, especially against fearful visions and despair. Hildegard of Bingen (12th century Germany) recommended stuffing dream pillows with betony to protect the sleeper from nightmares. Sprinkle around or near all doors and windows to form a protective barrier. If troubled by nightmares fill a small cloth pillow and place it under your pillow.

An ointment made of rosemary and betony can be applied to adder bites to draw the poison. Betony is also known as Bridgit's Comb and mentioned in the prayer to summons St. Bride. Anoint yourself with this herb and say, "Early on Bride's morn shall the serpent come from the hole. I will not harm the serpent, nor will the serpent harm me."

Another version to recite is, "This is the day

of Bridgit. The Queen shall come from the mound. I will not touch the Queen, nor will the Queen touch me."

In the Asatru tradition (Norse Pagans), Betony is sometimes identified with *attorlothe* (OE *attorlaðe* / *poison-hater*) and included in the Nine Herbs Charm (Mugwort ("most senior of herbs"), Plantain ("mother of herbs"), Lamb's Cress ("resolute"), Betony ("fought the serpent"), Chamomile ("never for infection should anyone yield their life"), Crab-Apple, Chervil and Fennel). Betony is a powerful wood to wear to ward off evil spirits.

The Birch tree is considered one of the very first forest trees. The Birch is used extensively in cleansing rituals. This is another of the Druid sacred trees and a must for all practitioners. Other common names for this herbal tree is Lady of the woods, Osterick, Oderwort, Snakeweed, Easter Mangiant, Adderwort, and Twice Writen Protection. It is used for Exorcism, Purification. The only time you can gather this herb is in March when the leaves start to come onto the tree. The

traditional broom of witches is made of birch twigs. It is used for Protection, purification, wards negativity, love, new beginnings, and changes. Birch is a feminine tree and an embodiment of the Great Mother. Cradles are often made of this wood as a protection for babies.

Use this simple love spell of the Birch Tree for almost immediate success in finding and binding true love.

You will need Strips of birch bark gathered at the New Moon in March, Menstrual blood (or poke berry ink).

Cast your circle in an undisturbed place, preferably in an open forest among the Birch and Mighty Oaks. Summons your guardian spirits and those that you will need to assist you. With the blood (or ink made of poke berries) write upon the Birch Strips,

"Bring me the true love that I desire".

Ask that the winds of the east carry your plea to the Goddess of Love. Burn the strip of bark along with your favorite incense and say, "Goddess of Love, God of Desire, Bring to me sweet

passion's fire!"

Repeat this incantation until the Birch strip is completely burned. Once the fire is out, dismiss your circle and guardians and go home in confidence that love is yours very soon.

Before a spell or ritual you can also use Bistort to increase your Psychic powers. Bistort is also used in fertility rituals to conceive a child. Bistort is also called Osterick, Oderwort, Snakeweed, Easter Mangiant, Adderwort, and Twice Writhen. Bistort belongs to the planet Saturn, and has cold and dry characteristics; both the leaves and roots have a powerful faculty to resist all poison and fight infections.

The root, in powder form is drunk to expel venom from the body and the cure of the plague, the small-pox, measles, or any other infectious disease, driving it out by sweating. An amulet of the mother goddess fashioned out of the root is carried when one wishes to conceive. Sprinkle an infusion of Bistort around your home to keep out unwanted visitors. Bistort and Bittersweet both can be used for Healing and Protection.

A practitioner can use Blackberries in rituals of Healing, Money, and Protection. This herb is Sacred to the goddess Brigit. The leaves and berries are used to attract wealth or healing. This is a Goddess herb, belonging to the planetary sphere of Venus.

To perform a simple Money Spell using Blackberries you will need two green candle, some sunflower oil, parchment and several blackberries and a piece of Malachite.

When the moon is between full and new, gather your thoughts and go to a sacred place to you where you can be alone and uninterrupted. Bathe yourself from head to toe with the oil of Lily of The Valley. It will bring you tranquility and peace during your ritual. Cast your circle and call on the Goddess of your choice, Lakshmi, Laxmi, Diwali (Indian Goddess of Wealth) Eirine, Fortuna, or Plauto (Greek Goddesses), or Sahinare of the Elves. You must choice the goddess which you are more comfortable with. For males use the Gods, they will be more sympathetic to your needs. Once you are ready, do the summoning and anoint

your candles with Sunflower oil, light your candles and say," Great Goddess I plea, that you will great good fortune to me". Say this seven times as you light the candles and concentrate on the financial needs you have.

At this point you should feel the presence of the goddess, hold the stone of Malachite for the goddess to see. Say, "Goddess of all riches, bless this stone and cause it to draw that which I desire to me." Crush the blackberries and paint the stone with a symbol of money. Let it dry. Relinquish the circle and give the gifts of blackberries to the goddess. Carry this stone with you and it will draw your financial needs to you.

For years Malachite is the Money and Love stone. It is used for raising the spirits, increasing hope, health and happiness, attracting prosperity and removing blocks to spiritual growth. The copper in malachite is said to help irregular menstruation and this stone is also valued for toothache, asthma, eyesight problems and rheumatism. Malachite is forest green in color, and is known as the 'Stone of transformation and

prosperity'. It gives the courage to dispel fear in relationships, and the self-knowledge to be more tolerant, loyal, and practical. Malachite is an essential stone for the practitioner's cabinet.

Remember that your spells will vary in results based on the will of the universe. If you have done things that are against the greater good, then be prepared to have to repeat your requests and ask for forgiveness. You may want to cast a return spell to possibly break the spell which has stopped you from success.

Blackthorn, also known as Sloe, Mother of the Wood, or Wishing Thorn. Returns evil to sender. The thorns are used for sticking into black figure candles, voodoo dolls and poppet's of enemies that will not leave you alone. Hung over doorways or carried. The sloe wards off evil and calamity, banishes demons and negative vibrations.

As you can see, the use of herbs is very rewarding as well as beneficial to the practitioner. It is the first things a serious practitioner learns, even if it is not one of the

twelve powers given them by the creator.

Chapter Four

Rites, Spells, and Initiation

As you move into your exploration of the magical arts, you must move into stages. This is to give you time to grow into your new found talents as well as to instruct you in the ways of the craft. Once you have become known to the Practitioners of the Wise Ways, and expressed an interest to join them, you will be given many tasks. Each person must serve for one year and a day. This commitment is not to be taken lightly and within that period of a year and a day, you will have the opportunity to walk away as a clean spirit. With this level you will begin to practice the magical arts with a more focused method of awareness and your spells and rituals will become easier for you to obtain positive results. At this stage you will

begin your own Book of Shadows. As you go forward in knowledge, gather you some Bladderwrack and Bleeding Heart to keep it in your magical supply cabinet.

Bladderwrack is one of the herbs that most level one initiate will use for many rituals. It is used for Protection, Sea Spells, Wind Spells, Money, and Increased Psychic Powers. You must always use this herbal to call the spirits and deities of the sea. One of the first rituals you will be assisted in will call for this herb. This herb is sacred to Neptune and all sea deities. Bladderwrack can be useful in all spells involving water and the natural flow of things. The practitioner should gather the entire plant found on rocks the end of June. It should be dried rapidly to keep its potency in the sun, when it becomes brittle and may be reduced to powder. This is the preferred way to store all your powdered herbs.

Bloodroot is used in potions and spells of Love, Protection, and Purification. Burn on charcoal or add an infusion of the herb to bath water to counter negative spells. It can be carried

in a black mojo bag for protection or carried in a red mojo bag to attract love.

We use Bloodroot is salves to also charm warts and cleanse blemished areas of the skin. The juice from the root is used as a body paint and dye. Warriors of the American Indians painted their faces with it and maidens their bodies. It is widely used in sex magic to paint the symbols of the Goddess and attract the powers of primitive sex.

Boneset is used for Protection and Exorcism. Burn as an incense or make into a tea from the herb and sprinkle around the home to protect from negative energies. Other names for this powerful herb are, Thorough wort, thorough-stem, thorough wax, wood boneset, teasel, agueweed, fever wort, sweating plant, cross wort, vegetable antimony Indian sage, wild sage, and wild Isaac. Make a tea with Chamomile and drink it as a tea to cure a cold or flu. When you have a cold or sore throat, pour boiling water into a cup with a few teaspoons of dried boneset and you will sweat the cold out of your system. Another wonderful herb for teas and potions is Borage.

Borage made into a tea aids psychic power. Carry the leaves for protection. Carry the fresh blossoms to strengthen your courage and call the Angels to protect you in your endeavors. Use in money and business spells. The Furry gray-green leaves have a cucumber flavor. Leaves can be used in salads, iced drinks and vegetables. Beautiful blue bell-shaped flowers can be used as garnish in fruit cups, and salads. It attracts insects to pollinate your flower garden and is a favorite of the woodland creatures. Sow Borage seeds outdoors every month for a continual harvest of fresh leaves and flowers.

Borage is excellent to grow alongside tomatoes and helps to improve strawberry crops. Borage is a Masculine Herb and is common to the Air Elementals. Borage is ruled by Jupiter. I would consider Borage to be an essential herb for any practitioner's medicine cabinet.

When you need to know about things of the future, take a portion of Bracken before bed for Prophetic Dreams. Bracken is used for Healing, Rune Magic, and Prophetic Dreams. It is a Masculine herb ruled by the planet Mercury and governed by the Air Elementals. If you burn Bracken outside, you are calling on the rain spirits to bring forth rain.

Briony is also known as Wood Vine, Tetterberry, and Wild Vine. It is used for Image Magic, Money, and Protection. It is a Masculine herb under the great planet of war, Mars. It is ruled by the Earth Elementals and used to decorate the altar of the Goddess. Briony root is wrapped in a piece of money for wealth. It can be used in place of mandrake root if necessary but never recommended. Another plant used in spells for

Money is Bromeliad.

Bromeliad is used for Protection as well as Money. It has been called Chameleon Star and Earth Star Plant. It is a Masculine herb under the influence of the Sun and Air Elementals. It should be grown in the home to acquire money and luxuries, also protective to things in areas where it grows.

A ritual of spring cannot be done without the aid of the herb, Broom. This herb is used in rituals of Purification, Protection, Wind Spells, and Divination. This is another Druid Sacred Tree; it is a many-branched erect shrub with simple or trifoliate leaves, and golden "sweet-pea" flowers. Brooms flowers bound with colored ribbons are carried at weddings ensure many children. Couples may choose to "jump the broom" as they make their transition to a new station of life. As the practitioner enters his second phase, after his year and a day, they shall do a ritual to signify their old life passing and their new life begun.

Broom can be substituted for furze (gorse) at

Spring Equinox. The Irish called it the Physician's Power because of its diuretic shoots. Sweep the outside of your ritual areas with it to purify and protect. Burning the bloom and shoots calms the wind. Hang this magical herb indoors for protection and purification. Toss in the air or bury it to raise or calm winds. Other names for this powerful herb are Link, Genista, Banal, and Scotch Broom. It is a Masculine Herb under the protection of the planet Mars. This is truly the reason that the saying "Witches Broom" was invented, for it's used to sweep the magic circle. This herb was placed on the end of the famous witches straw broom as the new practitioner swept the circle of all influences before the casting rites.

The sweeping of the Circle is the task of a first degree initiate and is a very sacred duty as well as an important one.

Just before you cast your circle, be wise and true of heart and spirit. Take a bunch of broom and prepare the area for drawing the circle of protection. Starting in the western corner, sweep all negative influences away from your magical

area. As you sweep, recite the following as you do your task until you are done:

Now the time of magic is here

I dispel negative souls and cleanse this circle

May the powers of the angels and spirits find
A protective hand on this broom so kind.

When you are finished, light a white candle at each of the four directions and place a small piece of the broom by each candle. It will soon be time for the priestess to enter and cast the circle so all may enter. Make sure that you the candles have also been anointed and are cleansed. This can be done with Carnations and carnation Oil.

Carnation is a Masculine herb, ruled by the sun and governed by Fire. Witches used this beautiful flower for protection during the burning season. It will add energy and power when used during all ritual as incense. It is always placed on the outside of the circle, next to the candles, to aid in drawing energy and power into the ritual. It is the symbol of betrothal and for this reason has always been used in hand fasting ceremonies.

Place this flower at your Altar as an offering for the Goddess.

Carnation is used in Anointing, Protection, Strength, Health and Healing, Energy, Power, Magical Power, Blessing, Consecration. Carnations are also used in most protective spells. Carnations are needed to make your Gold Dust Powder for rituals and spells.

Gold dust Powder is used to receive luck in gambling and games of chance. To make this powerful sprinkling powder follows this simple recipe.

When the Moon is full on the day of Mercury, take equal parts of powdered sandalwood (1oz), powdered carnation petals, powdered cinnamon, half dram frankincense oil, half dram myrrh oil and 4 oz of unscented talc.

Light a green candle and mix the ingredients together under the light of the full moon. Place it in a vial the color of emerald and save until needed. Before you go to a casino or to gamble or play a

game of luck, sprinkle this powder over your hands and Luck shall be with you.

For Luck and Money, Buckwheat is also a good herb to use. Buckwheat is also called Beech wheat, Brank, French Wheat, Saracen Corn and is easy to use and acquire. It is a feminine herb, ruled by the planet Venus. It is noted that if you are under the sign of Pisces, do not use this herb for obtaining money. Buckwheat is ruled by the Earth Elementals and most powerful when used on a Wednesday. Buckwheat Seeds can be ground for protection powder and sprinkled. The Grain should be kept in the kitchen to guard you against poverty.

Burdock like many other herbs can be used for Protection and Healing. Sprinkle powdered burdock root in your home to dispel negative energy. Add to protection sachets or wear as a necklace or medicine bag for protection. You can add to a Crystal Amulet in your medicine bag for extra protection for your magical amulet.

Make sure to use the right Quartz crystal that will get your desired results. When picking the

perfect crystal make sure the stone vibrates to you. Hold it in your hands and you should feel when you have the stone right for you. Stone Magic is another of the special powers given by the creators. Practitioners who have this gift are instantly drawn to the stones.

Crystals or Quartz Stones are the stones of mystics, psychics, and healers. They come in many varieties and colors. They Help your focus, awareness and meditation, as well as calms mind and eases anxiety and pain.

Crystals are also helpful for diarrhea, dizziness, kidney problems, spasms, vertigo, and hemorrhage. Crystals amplifies the effects of other stones. Rose Quartz is pink in color, and is known as the 'love stone'. It dispels negative emotional states including gloom, despondency, and possessiveness, whilst promoting harmonious relationships. The rose quartz gives the wearer the power of their emotions and opens heart for love even if the individual has problems giving or receiving it. This gemstone is very calming and loving, giving softness to hardened hearts and

teaching a broken heart to trust again. The rose quartz instills the ability for love to conquer all.

Rudlite Quartz when used balances the different levels of consciousness and also the endocrine glands. This crystal increases tissue regeneration. Good for bronchial sufferers. Used as an aid to mental and psychic activity. The Color of this crystal is clear with gold threads or fibers throughout.

Smokey Quartz purifies energy centers and has stabilizing effect on the possessor. It is useful especially in material matters where it encourages frugality. Smoke Quartz heals and lifts depression and is used to aid psychic ability and meditation. It is used to benefit the abdominal areas, kidneys, pancreas and sexual organs. Color: transparent Smokey brown.

Snow Quartz aids in letting go of things that are no longer important. Most of us have much excess baggage we carry along in life, well use this crystal to get rid of it and stop it from becoming a stumbling block in your future endeavors. Meditate with this crystal for

knowledge and deeper wisdom that was previously denied in all aspect of life.

Green Quartz Works with the heart chakra. This colored crystal was popular as a imperial stone in the orient. It works on negative energy and inspires creativity. Green Quartz is the stone of the muses. Some use the green crystal quartz as a money drawing stone.

Lavender Quartz is a type of Rose Quartz that has a wonderful lavender color. It stimulates the third eye, promotes clairsentience, Clairaudience and clairvoyance. Use it regularly in your meditations and it will instill the ability of direct response and instinctual behavior as well as promotes integration of all parts of one's personality.

Raspberry Quartz is used to Synthesize all seven major chakra's as well as brings attunement to the higher realms. It assists in Activating and cleansing all chakras. Use these crystals in everyday life. It is important that each different color is used for its intended purpose. Do not misuse the crystal for they have a soul of their own

and chose their owners.

Crystals have always been placed in magical staffs to draw more power and use those powers of the earth and the angels. Each crystal is renewed by direct sunlight or moonlight to keep it pure and placed under clear running water. You should try and obtain a Raspberry Quartz if you are making a wand or magic stick from the Cedar.

The Cedar is one of the sacred trees to the Druids. This is also a must for the practitioner's cabinet. It is also known as The Tree of Life and Crones Blood. Ancient Celts used cedar oil to preserve the heads of enemies taken in battle. Cedar smoke purifies the home. Use it in smudge sticks, incense and sweat lodges. The scent will enhance your psychic powers. Use cedar for Purification, Health and Healing, Luck, Good Fortune, Happiness, Banishing, Releasing, Exorcism, Money and Riches, Justice, Protection, Harmony, Peace. Cedar chips in the closet first came into being because witches hid these from the Inquisitionist during the middle ages.

Cabbage is one of the most misunderstood of

the plants of the practitioner. Good to eat and good to use as a medicinal herb. Although Cabbage is often connected to the Irish, the Celts brought cabbage to Europe from Asia around 600 B.C. Research shows that Cabbages were first grown by the Slavs in the ninth century. Greek and Roman colonists brought cabbages from the Black Sea region into Russia where it became the national dish. It was probably the Celts who introduced Cabbage to lands they invaded from the Mediterranean to the British Isles and Asia Minor. The roots of cabbage are very ancient and go much deeper than this. It is said that cabbage was used by the angels and one of the angels was confined in the cabbage plant.

The Tartars called it Kappes, krout, or kapost, the Hindi called it kopi, the Norwegians called it kaal and the Spanish called it col. The original Greek word (from which the Romans got *caulis*) was *Kaulion*. In Chinese, the word for "vegetable" is *choi*, which is the same word for cabbage. Kohlrabi (also known as cabbage turnip and stem cabbage) is a member of the same

species. The cabbage has a place in almost every cuisine from Korean kim chee, German sauerkraut, and Irish colcannon, to New England corned beef and cabbage. Kohlrabi is popular in Austrian, German, and Eastern European soups and stews; in Chinese dishes, where it often substitutes for the similar-tasting Chinese broccoli; and in the American South, where it joins any gathering of mixed boiled greens. Cabbage can kill, In fact, the longer cabbage is cooked, the greater the amount of hydrogen sulfide produced. This would follow the ancient Greek saying "Cabbage twice cooked is death." Cabbage has been used ritually for Luck. Use cabbage to cure and prevent hangovers from too much drinking. Cabbage on New year's Day cooked with silver is said to stop you from being poor the rest of the year. It is especially lucky to the one who finds the silver. Cabbage has shown to have curative properties for stomach ailments.

Camphor is another curative herb used by the Practitioner. It is used in rituals and spells of Chastity, Health, and Divination. Camphor in its solid form is added in small amounts to Lunar

charms and chastity type mixtures, (Eucalyptus or Lavender oil may be substituted). Burn in the home to purify the air and to dispel disease. It is rubbed on sore muscles to relieve muscle pain. A Good mixture for a muscle rub is camphor boiled with Mint.

Mint is also one of the most useful herbs and healing agents for the practitioner. Mint is ruled by Mercury and is masculine. It is governed by Air and is associated with the God Pluto and the Goddess Hecate. Mint is one of the sacred herbs to the Druids. There are many varieties of Mint and many names. Mints are used in spells for Money, Love, Lust, Healing, Exorcism, Travel, and Protection.

Peppermint is ruled by Fire and associated with the God Pluto. Used in healing potions and mixtures. Peppermint has a long history in purification spells. The fresh leaves rubbed against the head are said to relieve headaches. Peppermint worn at the wrist assures that you will not be ill. Its presence raises magical vibrations in your circle and around your area. Fresh peppermint on

the alter will call good spirits to be present and aid you in magic. When smelled, it compels sleep, and placed beneath the pillow it sometimes offers one glimpses of the future in dreams. It is rubbed against furniture, walls and floorboards to cleanse them of evil and negativity.

Pliny stated that peppermint excites love, and so can be added to this type of mixture. Peppermint is also used in travel spells. Its bright green leaves and crisp scent leads to its use in money spells and in prosperity spells, the easiest of which is to place a few leaves in the wallet or purse, or rub where your money is kept.

Pennyroyal another type of Mint also called Pudding Grass and used for Strength, Protection, and Peace.

Spearmint is used for Healing, Love, and Mental Powers. It is also called Garden Mint, Our Lady's Mint, Sage of Bethlehem, Erba Santa Maria and Lamb Mint. Grow Mint in the garden as a protective herb. Place it on your alter when working healing spells. Spearmint brings easy travel, attracts prosperity, and is placed in the

wallet to draw money.

Bergamot Mint is sometimes confused with the Citrus of the same name. Bee Balm is also called bergamot at times. It is used as an aromatic herb in potpourri or to make a honey-sweetened drink. The flavor is not so good for cooking. Also called Eau De Cologne Mint. The leaves of bergamot mint are slipped into wallets and purses to attract money. Fresh leaves are also rubbed onto money before spending it to ensure its return.

Mint is the major herb of the first degree initiate. You should eat some mint day to cleanse his body and soul. It will help strengthen your inner soul as well as make the body healthier.

Cat's Eye brings Happiness and serenity. It Stimulates intuition, enhances awareness and rids oneself of unwanted energy from ones spiritual fields. Also has a protective energy to this stones user and deflects energy vampires.

The Ruby, often called The Buddhist stone, stands for intuition and initiative, loyalty and courage and to protect against loss, unfaithfulness of partner, envy or nightmares. It Forewarns of

danger that can come your way. Vibrations can stop pains, spasms & fevers. The red Ruby is an ancient stone of love and endurance. Its focus on the heart and encourages romantic love. It promotes the ideal relationship. The ruby also releases disorientated or trapped love, and protects heart from suffering. This gemstone promotes the attainment of love objectives including health, happiness, wealth, and spiritual knowledge. The ruby can enhance dreams and attract great wealth. It is known as the "Stone of Nobility".

The Ruby is usually worn by the High Priestess during a Yule Festival. On this special occasion she will make a gift to the one who she will take as her mate for the year if she is unattached or so desires. This can only be done during the renewal time of Yule (Winter Solstice).

Yule also sees lots of Holly. Other names for Holly are Hulver Bush, Holm, Hulm, Holme Chase, Holy Tree, and Christ's thorn. It is used for Protection, Anti-Lightning, Luck, and Dream Magic. It is said to keep a person Honest in matters of Money and has the ability to repel monsters and

evil beings. The leaves of Holly are used in the Black Forest as a substitute for tea. Paraguay Tea so extensively used in Brazil, is made from the dried leaves and young shoots of another species of Holly (*Ilex Paraguayensis*), growing in South America. It is believed this practice evolved to today's Christmas Holly. Holly, with its warrior-like bristles, is known as an herb of protection.

Cast it about to repel unwanted animals and spirits. Holly is one of the evergreens brought into the home by Druids. It symbolizes a willingness to commune with the nature spirits to share one's abode during the winter's cold season. Planted near a house, holly repels negative spells sent against you. A bag of leaves and berries carried by a man increases his ability to attract women. Carry to promote good luck.

After midnight on a Friday, without making a sound, gather nine holly leaves, preferably from a non-spiny plant. Wrap these up in a white cloth using nine knots the tie the ends together. Place this beneath your pillow, and your dreams will come true. The traditional crowns for the bride and

groom are made of holly and Ivy in a hand fasting. The male uses Holly, the male plant and the woman uses Ivy, the female plant.

Ivy is a sacred herb of the Druids. The Ivy was sacred to Osiris and Dionysus. Ivy is used during the Winter Solstice for decorating and is worn by the maiden. Ivy provides protection when growing on or near a house. Ivy is equated with fidelity and is woven into marriage wreaths as well as worn by brides in hand fest ceremonies. Use in charms to bind luck, love, and fidelity to your partner in life. It is paired with holly, magically.

Another herbal of Yule is Juniper. Juniper is ruled by the Sun and is governed by Fire. It is a Masculine Herb and primarily used in spells and rituals of Protection, Anti-theft, Love, Exorcism, and Health. Juniper is also called Watchholder, Gin Berry, and the Gin Plant. Juniper was held sacred as many herbs by the druids and ancients. It is the primary ingredient in Gin. When burned it makes an excellent herb for purifying and protection. Give Juniper berries to men to increase

sexuality. You can Mix it with Mistletoe, Rosemary, and Pine makes a powerful all-purpose love spell.

Mistletoe is the kissing plant. As we all know if a person you are attracted to stands under the mistletoe, you are invited to kiss them. Mistletoe is ruled by the Sun and governed by Air. It is associated with the deities Apollo, Freya, Frigga, Venus and Odin. Mistletoe is also called Witches Broom, Golden Bough, All Heal, Holy Wood, Birdlime, and Devils Fuge. Mistletoe is used in spells of Protection, Love, Hunting, Fertility, Health, and Exorcism. Kissing under the mistletoe during the Winter Equinox is said to promote happiness in marriage and make couples stronger. You should always look to harvest this herb in Oak trees, which makes it a more potent herb. Since this plant is not actually an herb or tree, it is between worlds. So should it be cut between dusk and dawn. Mistletoe should be cut only with a golden handled ritual knife.

If you are alone on that sacred day, Light a Yule log or anointed candle to bring the light into

your life from the darkness of winter. If you burn a Yule Log remember it must come from your land or be given as a gift, never bought. At the last stage of the ritual, Cardamon will be lighted and there shall be a renewal of our oaths to our leaders.

Cardamon is a powerful sexual stimulant. As an oil, cardamon makes sexual encounters much better. Burn for love spells or use in love sachets. The ground seeds are added to warmed wine for a quick lust potion. They are also baked into apple pies for a wonderful amatory pastry. Caper is another herb used for Potency, Lust, and Luck.

When you need to attract a lover, use the handy kitchen spice and herb Caraway is a Masculine Herb, ruled by Mercury, governed by the Air. Its can be added to love spells and sachets to attract lovers of a more physical aspect. Medical it is used as a mild stimulant for digestion. Caraway is often added to love potions to keep lovers from being unfaithful. The seeds are placed in poppets and used in spells to find one's mate. They are said to inspire lust when baked into cakes or breads. Put some in your wedding cake,

or use it instead of rice to throw at the bride and groom. Pigeons are very fond of it too! A powerful love spell with caraway and herbs follows:

Go into a clearing in the woods on either a Friday or Monday night. Build a campfire. Throw a handful of coriander seeds onto the fire and say: "O magic coriander, make him/her mad".

Sprinkle some caraway seeds onto the fire while saying:

"O magic caraway, cause his/her wandering without cease".

Toss some mastic gum on the fire saying:

"O magic mastic put in his/her heart despair and tears".

Now sprinkle some cumin on the fire as you speak these words:

"O magic cumin, bring him/her to me".

It is at this point that you throw verdigris (the blue green coating that forms on copper) on the fire saying:

"O magic verdigris, light the fire in his/her heart".

Now take some myrrh throw it on the fire and say:

"O magic myrrh, cause him/her a frightful night".

Finally take the straw from a cemetery broom toss it on the fire and say:

"O magic broom, bring him/her to me".

This completes the ritual and the one you desire will be driven mad with passion for you if the will of the creator wishes. Another one with caraway for love is a lovers Tea.

Light three candles (red, pink and green).

Bring two cups of spring water to a slow simmer, add 4 caraway seeds, 4 fennel seeds, 1 tea bag, three rose hips, five teaspoons rose water (or five rose petals which have not been chemically sprayed).

While the tea steeps, concentrate on love feelings. Sitting comfortably, pour a cup of tea and drink. If you have a picture of your intended, place it where you can

look at it; otherwise visualize his face. If you wish to attract someone new, ask the Universe for love.

As you can see herbs, stones, and spirits are the things of spells and incantations. Call on the creator for assistance and use the proper combinations and you can have all that you desire. You can use Carob for Protection, and Health. A common Carrot for Fertility and Lust Or even a Cashew nut for money needs.

When the practitioner has legal problems or wishes to affect the outcome of legal matters, they should use the herb Cascara Sagrada which is used for Legal matters, money and protection. It is known as “The Sacred Bark”. To make a mojo bag to carry into the court with you gather the following items; Cascara Sagrada bark, galangel root, a sharks tooth, obsidian stone, parchment and some dragons blood ink.

Burn the Galangal root every night at midnight for two weeks prior to the court hearing or action. On the night before you enter the court, place the ashes in a blue mojo bag with the sharks

tooth and obsidian. On the parchment write your name and birthday encircled with the sacred pentagram. Seal the bag and put a magical charge on it to your desire for the court action. You should receive a favorable decision.

Obsidian is a powerful stone and can be used for removing blocks to the healing process as well as a stone for courts. It is good for divination and grounding. Reflects flaws in one's own nature and reveals subconscious, hidden truths, sharpening external and internal vision, helping stomach and improving muscle tone. Color of this stone includes black or black with white blotches. The solid Obsidian with no flaws has been used to make the most powerful scrying mirrors.

Rainbow Obsidian Is known as the "stone of pleasure" This stone brings one gratification and enjoyment in life. It is also good to use for "gazing" especially for interests of love, relationships, and development of one's spiritual and physical forms in totality. It also brings out the spiritual side of one's nature.

Red-Black Obsidian provides vitality and

virility. It allows for a connection to the brotherhood of humanity. Treats fevers and chills. Also aids in allowing expansion of identity. Good stone to stir the flames of the spirit.

Snow Flake Obsidian brings automatic grounding during meditation. It is used to treat disorders of skin, blood and ears. Good stone to use for serenity, love and beauty. Snow Flake Obsidian is also called the 'stone of purity'. It is recommended strongly that all practitioners carry for their own personal use a piece of Obsidian. It will balance you as well as guide you in your spiritual journey. Obsidian can also direct you to the familiar that is right for you with the help of Catnip.

Catnip is a Feminine Herb, ruled by Venus and Governed by Water. It is used in Cat Magic to help you find a familiar. Positive aspects of using catnip are it brings joy, friendship and love. Its flowers and leaves can be used to treat colds. When in incense form it can be used to consecrate your magic tools. It was chewed by warriors for fierceness in battle. Large dried leaves are

powerful markers for magic books. Give it to your cat to create a psychic bond. Use in spells to promote beauty, happiness, and love.

Celandine is a Masculine Herb, Ruled by the Sun and governed by Fire. This herb is used to help the wearer escape unfair imprisonment and entrapment. It also cures depression. Carry this into a dangerous situation and watch its warmth carry you safely home.

Practitioners beware, eat your soup without a care. Celery will give you Mental Power. It promotes Lust and Psychic power. The herb centaury is good for removing snakes from your property. It can also be used to heal wounds and sprains. Centaury is for people who find it difficult to say 'no' to other people. Usually these people are so kind and gentle that helping others becomes so overpowering that they become a slave to the wishes of others. Use this simple ritual to help them escape this nightmare of living life through the services forced on them by others.

On the Sunday night of the waxing moon gather the following items; Centaury, a Lodestone,

a Light Blue and a white candle, a piece of wax, salt and your magical sword. Do the great invocation for Sunday.

“Come, Heavenly Spirits who have the blessings of the rays of the Sun, Luminous Spirits who are ready to obey the power of the great Tetragrammaton, come and assist me in the operation that I am making under the powers of the Grand Light of Day which the Eternal Creator has formed for the use of universal nature. I invoke you for these purposes. Be favorable and obedient to what I shall ask in the Name of Amioram, Adonai, and Sabaoth”.

Light your candles and place them on the alter. Place all items you have brought with you close at hand. Do the Sword consecration as follows; Take your salt and sprinkle it over the sword. Say the following:

“O Great and holy Creator, Who art that which created the universe, the God of strength and fortitude and greatly to be

feared, bless and purify this Instrument that it may seek justice and be a terror unto the Enemy, and therewith I may fight with and overcome all phantasms and oppositions, through the influence and help of Thy most wondrous creator, Holy Mighty Name, On, St. Agla, Amioram, Adonai, Sabaoth, Astaroth, and in the name of all those that guard the universe I cleanse and charge this mighty instrument of justice and mercy”.

Hold your magical sword over your head so it is fully in the light of the moon and say,

“Oh Great Ones it is done”

Now place your sword on your alter. Take your wax and form it in the shape of a person that has the affliction and needs your help in becoming her/his own person. Once you have fashioned the wax in the appropriate shape, place some Centaury over it and visualize the person you intend to help.

Visualize in your mind's eye strings around your wax figure, leading to all the people and things that would stop this person from being their

own person. With the tip of your magical sword, trace a pattern around the wax figure, cutting all the strings that bind her/him to people who wish to harm or take advantage of her/him. See this infirmity dissolving away and the person becoming more assertive. Place the Loadstone at the heart of the wax figure and leave it overnight. The following morning, remove the loadstone and give it as a gift to the person you just assisted.

It would be unkind of me to not caution you to be sure to cleanse your circle and never leave it open. Make sure that your magical items are stored properly and purified after each ritual. In the above ritual you must also be very careful to never cut the world strings. For in doing so you do the person a great injustice and cut them from the world they know. If that is your intent then you should use a Black candle, different herbs, and stones and use a different incantation. To not adhere to certain ritual items can create negative energies around you and make you susceptible to outside attacks from the world of demons and spirits.

Cherry is not only wonderful fruit bearing

tree but an herbal and powerful tree. It is one of the Druid sacred tree, chips of the wood or bark were burned at Celtic festivals especially Sabbaths. It is also known as Black Cherry, Wild Cherry or Chokecherry. Use Chokecherry bark tea to clear the throat. The powdered berries can be used to improve appetites. The inside pit is poisonous so be careful. Cherry juice is used as a substitute for blood in old recipes. Always grow cherries around your property if possible.

Chicory is a substitute for coffee in daily life and a herb for removing obstacles. You should use this herb each day to keep obstacles from your path. It can be drank instead of coffee or added to your morning coffee. It is a substitute in rituals using centaury. In older times it is used in spells of Invisibility. To find favors with those of authority and frigidity. Use China Berries for luck, the flowering herb Chrysanthemum and Cinchona for Luck and Protection. It is also said in the witching hour, Use the herb citron for Psychic power.

Chili pepper are not only a wonderful additive to your family recipes, but can be used to

break a minor hex, keep a lover faithful and bring you love.

To bring you love, use this simple spell. You will need: A stone of carnelian, two red candles, Oil of Rose, Pen and paper, Cayenne Pepper or Chili pepper, and red cotton or thread. Start by cleansing your body and mind. Wash your body and consecrate it to the Goddess Artemis, or the goddess of love for your tradition. Take time to get your thoughts on the ritual at hand by meditation and visualization. Cast your magic circle and place your items on the altar. Light incense that is pleasing to you and will promote health and positive vibrations to the goddess and Spirits.

Light the altar candles and incense.

Take some time in quiet meditation and say a prayer of invocation to the goddess. Write down the qualities you are seeking in your ideal partner. Be precise and to the point but not too restrictive the Goddess knows what is needed so be sensible.

It is Very important make a duplicate of the list, you will need it later.

Then say in a clear and precise voice:

“Let the love that I am seeking come into my life. Let this man/woman be (now say what your ideal man should be) and let them come to me in love and light. Let this man/woman be with me of their free choice and harming none may we celebrate our love equally and in purity.”

Visualize your love (though they may be faceless, this is very important) and when you have this image firmly fixed light the red ritual candles. Visualize a white light within yourself at your solar plexus area and let this grow in strength and intensity. When you feel that this is as intense as you can manage, move the light/energy up through your body and into your right arm, down through your hand and into the stone of carnelian. Fill the carnelian with your intent and energy to find new love and when this is done, wrap the crystal inside the paper that you have written your description of

the perfect mate on and the pepper, then bind it up tightly with the red thread. Make sure the Chili pepper has been cut in two pieces and is bound on each side of the carnelian.

Extinguish the red ritual candles and afterwards the altar candles. Repeat this ritual for the next two days, at the same time, only keeping the carnelian wrapped up inside the list and using your duplicate so you can remember the exact detail of what you are asking for. Keep the crystal wrapped in your list with you and when this ritual has brought you love, bury the crystal in good clean earth or water.

The carnelian stone has been used since the beginning of time for spells and rituals. Carnelian or Cornelian is believed to encourage friendship and cheerfulness and to protect from evil, to ground energies and concentration and strengthen family love. Also used for understanding and vigor, overcoming negativity, bringing wisdom and combating depression and sluggishness. This stone is helpful for lower spine problems checking bleeding, used to treat depression, rheumatism and

infertility or impotence. The colors of this stone are usually Orange to a deep orange red, sometimes with darker flecks. Carnelian is the second gift of the High Priestess to her second degree practitioner.

This wonderful stone protects you against envy, fear and rage. It helps to banish sorrow from the complicated emotional structures. When this stone vibrates to you, it brings loving energy dispels apathy, indolence and passivity. It can cleanse the first, second, third and fourth chakras. Treatment of neuralgia, gall stones, kidney stones, pollen allergies and colds. Modern Medical treatments use carnelian because of the orange light rays that the cells of our body needs.

To assist a person in curing an ailment with carnelian, simply places the stone over the affected area in sufficient quantity to cover the area. Say a simple prayer to the goddess with the proper incenses and let the carnelian do the rest. Because stones vibrate and change the energy field of the person, it may take many treatments to have a positive effect. When you are finished cleanses

your stones. Never leave any negative influences in your stones. What the carnelian has pulled from one person may be transferred to another. Use carnelian in conjunction with Columbine for Courage and Love.

Cinquefoil is a Masculine Herb, ruled by Jupiter and governed by the earth. Hang this herb around your windows and doors for protection of evil. When you cast your circle and do not need the mischievous spirits, place this at the four corners of the circle.

This herb is used mainly in spells of prosperity. Cinquefoil mixed with other cleansing herbs is used to sanctify weapons. It is also called Five Fingered Grass, Creeping cinquefoil, and Five Leaved Grass. Use this herb in infusion in ritual baths and for purification rites. Cinquefoil bestows eloquence and protection to the wearer, bring it to court. Cinquefoil is used in spells of Love, power, wisdom, health, and abundance looking at the plant, these characteristics are the names of the leaves. Hang at the door for protection.

Another good herb for the ritual needs of a first degree practitioner is Cinnamon. Cinnamon is a Masculine Herb and is ruled by the sun and governed by Fire. This is the herb belonging to the goddess Aphrodite. Cinnamon is used in spiritual quests and as a male aphrodisiac. Use cinnamon to assist you in discovering your familiar. It is widely use in Shamanistic earth quests. This is an essential for all magical cabinets also. Use Cinnamon to increase your awareness and power. Use this in combination with other herbs and stones for a prosperity charm.

It is recommended as a skin astringent and digestive aid in tea form. Cinnamon in a ground form or taken with milk is a good balance after a heavy meal or dessert. It is also used for diarrhea, dysentery or general indigestion. It is an excellent aromatic and makes good anointing oil for any magical working. When id it called Cassia, the highest grade on cinnamon.

Use the following as an Amulet for Courage, happiness, and Money. You will need thyme for courage, marjoram to promote happiness,

cinnamon to draw money, and a quartz crystal empowered for all purposes.

Cleanse your mind and body of all negative influences. Cast Circle in the fashion taught by your tradition. Hand sew a small piece of white fabric into a small pouch, leaving the open at one end. Make sure that you sew with power and intent when making your pouch.

Empower the Herbs and the crystal. Say out loud:

"From this charm I create, only courage, happiness and money are to follow. I beg and ask the creator to aide me and In no way shall this spell reverse, or place upon me any curse. This is my will, so mote it be."

Keep this amulet in your bag or pocket. It may need to be charged again with more empowered herbs and crystals after about six weeks. You can also place a clover in your charm for extra potency.

Clover is a Masculine herb ruled by Mercury and governed by the air. Clover is

Associated with the Triple Goddess and therefore always held very sacred. Use in rituals for beauty, youth, and healing injuries, curing madness. A Four-leaved clover enables one to see fairies, and as a general good-luck charm. This is most commonly used herb for gaining extra money but only the four-leaf variety. Modern day practitioners will sometimes carry amulets of golden four leaf clovers to guard their money and prevent poverty.

The stone or metal Gold is a powerful witch's stone. Not only has it been used since the beginning of time. It is said that the Angels who were enamored by the daughters of man brought this forth to impress the fairest sex. Perhaps this is why this honorable stone has been coveted for centuries. The Old Testament tells of the wealth of King Solomon's Mines and how his fleet would return from legendary Ophir laden with gold for his treasury. The Queen of Sheba would visit Solomon bearing gifts of gold in appreciation for his advice and wisdom.

Gold is used in many ceremonies for the

vessels of the craft because it is considered the purest of the metals. Gold has been the metal of king. It is ruled by the sun and used as a powerful protection amulet. Adds energy to ritual, gives courage, confidence and will power. Protective, used in defensive magic, promotes wisdom, money attracting, used for success. An Amulet of Gold is given to the Practitioner as they splinter from the original group and also to those who branch away to form their own groups. One amulet and herb called The Cloth of Gold is used to help the practitioner to understand the language of the animals in the forest. Some practitioners are granted this gift as one of the twelve powers of the ancients.

In Japan gold must be given to the Yuki Onna, or Snow Woman. This Japanese demon inhabits snow storms and causes travelers to become lost. Eventually the travelers become exhausted and freeze to death. A book could be written on the uses of Gold and the ritual practices of the Alchemists.

Club Moss, also called Selago, Foxtail,

Lycopod, Vegetable Sulpher, Wolf Claw or Stag's Horn Moss. Club Moss is toxic. Among the Indian tribes of North America, it was used because of its healing and moisture-absorbing properties. Modern Magicians use club moss mixtures to create "lightning flashes" and dramatic effects to their shows. When properly gathered, the herb becomes a charm of power and protection. Wear it, add it to incense, and use it to commune with the Gods and Goddesses. Use Coconut as a purification, protection and chastity herb.

Cohosh also called Black Cohosh is used in spells of Love, Courage, Protection, and Potency. Black Cohosh has been used in American Indian medicine for malaise, gynecological disorders, kidney disorders, malaria, rheumatism, and sore throat. In Nineteenth century America, black Cohosh was a home remedy used for rheumatism and fever, as a diuretic, and to bring on menstruation.

It is one of those the herbs that is highly recommended for the serious practitioner. When a practitioner is passing from Maiden to crone, it is

recommended that she take this herb once a week for a period of six months of the year. Black Cohosh can be poisonous in large doses. It contains a chemical much like estrogen, so those advised by their doctor's not to take the Pill should avoid using this herb. Black Cohosh leaves laid around a room is said to drive away bugs, and to drive away negativity.

Coltsfoot is used in rituals of Love and prophetic Visions. Inhaling the smoke of the burning leaves can cause visions. For the practitioner who is about to enter into the craft, after they have served a year and a day, this herb is used in the ritual of passing.

The ritual of passing is more emotional than physical. In this ritual the practitioner must be prepared to leave his infant stage and move into the teenage years of his spiritual life. They will be training in the use of herbs and stones, but the rituals and spells will be more complex and the results more dramatic. For the ritual of passing the High Priestess will use her magic dagger, the herb Coriander, a bottle of wine or strong drink. The

practitioner shall supply the drink. It shall be considered a gift to the goddess incarnate. A series of questions are asked of the new practitioner and a magical rite that signifies their loyalty and willingness to serve the craft and the ancients.

Coriander is a Masculine Herb Ruled by the planet mars and governed by Fire. It is used for Protection of home and serenity, peace, good in ritual drinks, incenses for longevity and love spells. If added to wine, it makes a good love potion for two consenting parties. To use in this fashion, grind seven grains of coriander and mix into a wine and drink. Also used in love sachets and charms. Coriander works well in love and healing mixtures. The seeds are used for healing, especially easing headaches. Put some in the chalice for a hand fasting ritual and as previously stated it is the herb that will be used when a practitioner officially enters the service of the craft. Their study of herbs and magic will continue and they will grow in spiritual bliss.

Copal is ruled by the Sun and governed by Fire. This herb is used in spells of Love and

Purification. When making poppets and voodoo dolls, a piece of copal is used for the heart. The spiritual aura of copal is very strong. It is native to Mexico and Central America, and has been used as incense in religious and magical ceremonies for untold hundreds of years, beginning, perhaps, with the Mayans or even prior to the days of an older people. Burn it for protection, cleansing, purification, to promote spirituality, and to purify quartz crystals and other stones before use in magic. It may be substituted for Frankincense but only in emergency situations. A piece of copal may be used as the heart in poppets.

Comfrey is a Feminine Herb ruled by Saturn and governed by Water. It is sometimes called Slippery Root, Knitbone or Blackwort. It is used in spells for Safe travel, money, healing, and honoring the Crone aspect of the Goddess. Carry Comfrey for safe travel. You can use it to ensure the safety of your luggage while traveling. This is a simple charm to perform for any person who is going on a journey. The day before your journey, tuck a piece of the root into each of your bags.

Chapter Five

Magical Rituals and Spiritual Growth

As you are becoming more familiar to your new spiritualism and way of life, I'm sure you will agree it's entirely different that you would have expected. At this stage of your journey, I'm sure things are much easier to cope with. Instead of "Chasing a dream", you have discovered that the dreams are there and coming to you. I have always said that you can't obtain things that you chase; after all to chase something would only imply that they are running from you. As a Practitioner, we do not chase, we simply sit and call them to us. I am sure you have gained a great knowledge in herbs and the way of vibrations. You may have tried some of the simple spells to determine if you are on the right path.

As a practitioner you will become more

familiar with ritual magic and changing vibrations to make life better for you and those around you. Ritual magic is the use of magic within a sacred space as part of the ritual. Usually that is what we have termed as your sacred circle. It is something that takes a great deal of discipline and training because it exerts influence over the environment through psychological transformation, used well, it aids spiritual growth. This ritual magic is linked to the greater cycles of the God and Goddess, and their energies used to power the process of inner understanding and both external and internal transformation.

While others are using simple things like cotton for medical uses and cleaning their eyes and ears, we are using Cotton for Luck, Healing, Protection, and Rain.

The preparation for your initiation is very important. The time initiation will be performed during the full moon. The time of day will be associated with your special time of the day ruled by your planet.

In the fortnight running up to your initiation

ritual, you will need to spend time in regular daily meditation. This is best done by cleansing the area that you perform your personal rituals. You should cast a circle and call the guardians of the four quarters and then declaring that you are about to embark on the path and asking for help and guidance. During this time have some secret names available to suggest to the high priestess. To discover your secret name, meditate and ask your animal guide for guidance.

You will need to prepare for the initiation ritual by thinking about the vows you will be asked to take. In the ritual that follows I have written throughout this book some of the vows that may be asked of you. This will vary by the tradition you have chosen to enter. Please remember when these are taken you must follow them above all. You will be required to enter the ritual area as a new being. Some traditions do this sky clad (nude). This will show that you come stripped of clothing and beliefs and are ready to accept your place among the rest of the coven. Once the ritual is over you will be covered with a sheer yellow fabric by the

high priestess. Please bear in mind that not all traditions of the craft use sky clad.

On The Appointed Day, at the moment you get up say a prayer for guidance to the goddess. Spend the day quietly meditating and make every action deliberate and part of the preparation and build-up to the rite of passing.

You should cleanse your body as well as the spirit by fasting or only eating green foods such as a salad or raw vegetables. Drink only pure spring water that you have used a blessing ritual to cleanse. Do not pollute your mind and body by smoking, drinking alcohol or taking any type of drug. As part of the preparation, have a ritual cleansing bath. Place bath salt in the bath to cleanse you and your aura. Use the herbal oil that is best for your meditations. When you get out, allow yourself to dry naturally.

Set your altar at daybreak with a clean fresh altar cloth with two altar candles, place some ritual cake on your pentacle, wine in your chalice, a censer, your Athame, anointing oil, salt in a small dish, water (spring water ideally) in a small dish,

your first pendent and any other items that is personal to you.

Start your day by lighting the candles and incense. Purify the space you are working in by holding your hands on the water container and visualize it glowing with white light. You can say words like “I purify this water; let it be filled with goodness and light, in the name of the Goddess and God.” Do the same with the salt: purify it and say something like “I purify this salt; let it be filled with goodness and light, in the name of the Goddess and God.” Place a pinch of the salt into the water and mix it up. Sprinkle some of the salty water around the space you are working in and cast a magic circle, call the guardians of the four directions and invoke the Goddess and God.

Breathe deeply and gather energy into yourself, release the white noise of daily life and allow yourself to become still and peaceful, and then dedicate yourself by saying:

“I, (Your name), have prepared myself for dedication to the path of the Goddess and God. I ask for wisdom and compassion,

integrity and discretion, the strength to always work for goodness and light; may the Goddess and God sustain and fortify me in these. Let me walk in the light before your high priestess and priest and become closer on my path of enlightenment”

“I call on the Elements of Air, Fire, Water and Earth for their blessing: I vow that I will work towards peace and harmony, that I will respect and value the Earth and all its life and creatures, that I will respect myself. I will always try to celebrate the joy and wonder of life and harm none.”

Anoint yourself with the oil, then the remaining salty water and lastly with wine, saying:

“I wish to ask the guardians to show me my magical name so I may be reborn in the order of the second degree. I ask for the blessing of the Goddess and God on all my endeavors and go forward in

perfect love and perfect trust”

Anointing yourself can be done in a number of ways. You can anoint yourself with a pentagram, cross, circle or a symbol that has personal significance to you. During personal rituals, you must decide what works best for you and what traditions as an individual you wish to follow. Present yourself to the guardians of the four corners of the earth and declare that you are ready to take the next step before the creator. This is now the time to re-consecrate your magical tools as those belonging to a practitioner.

Finally, consecrate the wine and cake by touching them with your Athame, and channeling the pure energy of the creator energy through it. Drink not the wine nor eat the cakes, for it is a gift to the God and Goddess. Meditate your will to be part of your circle and to grow. Thank the Goddess and God say farewell to the Elements, then close the circle. Take the cakes and bury them and soak the ground around them with the wine.

Write your vows which you have been taught

on parchment with red ink or blood. You will say these to your Coven leaders. Sign the parchment with your true name and the magical name you have selected and present it to your High Priestess. This is the start of your new life; Your High Priestess will either accept the offering or turn away. Do not do anything busy or demanding for the rest of the day, relax, ponder and be ready for your ritual. It is wise to allow yourself a full week before undertaking any magical work. After you have attended the ritual this will allow the powers that be to empower you gradually and not overwhelm you with the new responsibilities that come with your new status. During that week get some Cyprus Oil and wood, you will need it for your first ritual and to make a new magical staff or wand.

Cypress is used for Longevity, Healing, Comfort, and Protection. Burn Cypress wood or chips for Happiness, Harmony, Peace, Inspiration, Binding, Wisdom, Releasing, Defense, and Longevity. Cypress Oil is used for Blessing, Consecration, and protection. The unique scent

stimulates healing and eases the pain of losses of all kind. Cypress is a Masculine herb ruled by Saturn and governed by the Earth. It is connected to death in all of its aspects. The smoke of Cypress is used to consecrate ritual objects.

On the eve of the first night of a waxing moon after your initiation into the order, take a stone of Zircon, Cyprus Chips, a Black Cloth, a white cloth, some salt, blue and White candles, a good portion of Jasmine Incense and go into the forest. When you have found a clearing that has trees around it that is pleasing to you, lay your items on the ground. Invoke the spirits of the four winds and pledge your ear for any and all knowledge they wish to share.

Cast your circle in the following manner. Pick a spot where your circle can be nine feet in diameter. Take some broom and sweep all negativity and influences from your area. Do this from the center of your circle walking deosil (clockwise) around your circle letting your distance cover the entire area of the circle. As you return to the center, sprinkle some salt on the area

to purify it. As you enter the circle, look at the circle you have created, visualize a white light glowing around it making it a fortress for your magical work.

When working with a group, you will see that the traditional method is using the sword or athame to draw the circle, walking and saying:

"I cast this circle, the circle of power, to be a shield of protection and a boundary between the worlds of Men and the realms of the Mighty Ones. I bless thee and consecrate thee, in the names of the Lady and Lord. The Circle is Cast. So mote it be! "

Call the elements into your circle as in the following manner. Starting in the East, call the elements of the Air and New Beginnings. You then turn deosil (clockwise) to the South to call Fire, then to the West to call Water and to the North to call Earth. To call the elements face the direction indicated and says,

Ye Lords of the Watchtowers of the East,

ye Lords of Air; I do summon call and stir you up, to witness this rites and to guard the Circle.” Ye Lords of the Watchtowers of the South, ye Lords of Fire; I do summon call and stir you up, to witness our rites and to guard the Circle. Ye Lords of the Watchtowers of the West, ye Lords of Water; I do summon call and stir you up, to witness our rites and to guard the Circle. Ye Lords of the Watchtowers of the North, ye Lords of Earth; I do summon call and stir you up, to witness our rites and to guard the Circle.

Once this is done you are ready to start. Light your candles and place them around your items. Place your Wood chips into a fire to cleanse and make a path for the summoning you are about to do. Pick up each item and present them to the guardians. Lay them on your alter on the white cloth and with much thought and deliberate force, hold up the Stone of Zircon and say:

Stone of Zircon, I charge you to bring forth

the knowledge that I seek to become a better person and practitioner. May the Great Spirit Abraxas appear to grant me wisdom and entrust this stone with his legacy of the mother of all things. You should feel the vibration of the stone as it is charged as your personal stone of knowledge.

Light the incense and candles and breathe in the knowledge and new awareness that have come into your thoughts. White all the things gained and the complete ritual you have done in your Book of Shadows.

After you have finished your ritual dismiss the conjured spirit, say farewell to the elements with much gratitude and thanks, starting in the North with Earth and moving widdershins (counter clockwise) to Air in the East. This is done before opening the circle; the closing of a rite is done in reverse order from the opening. Place the zircon in the black cloth and keep it with your sacred stones. Be very careful to make sure that you have performed a dismissal of the spirits and the grand spirit Abraxas and stored your stone properly. If we misuse that which is granted we will suffer the

penalties of the spirits and creator that hath given them. As we noted in the ritual for knowledge, we called upon Abraxas. Abraxas is the god or spirit whom it is difficult to know. His power is the very greatest, because man does not perceive it. Man sees the good and evil in things, but Abraxas he does not see, for he is indefinable life itself, which is the essence of good and evil alike. His holy powerful symbol is generally placed on crystals and gems to aid in enlightenment. Abraxas shall serve and reveal to the practitioner, that which he knows of all things. We use conjurations to open the doors and allow the spirits to enlighten and assist us.

We used the stone Zircon because of its mystical powers and vibrations. Zircon Promotes development of higher mind and prophecy and reduces melancholia. In healing it is used for lungs, liver, brain, venereal diseases and skin problems. The Color usually is clear or white. It is called the "stone of virtue." With regular use, it brings ones nature back into balance with the forces of the universe. Promotes the union of the physical,

mental emotional and spiritual. It also combines the properties of the first, third, and fourth chakras. In doing so it raises them to a higher level of intensity. It Increases the ability to complete all your endeavors. It is the symbol of the central "deity Innocence, purity, and constancy.

We used Jasmine incense because jasmine invokes spiritual love. It is symbolic to the Moon and the mysteries of that which is night. This is a ritual herb that may not be substituted. Do not use Jasmine that is not true and harvested properly for your spell or endeavor. Dried Jasmine flowers are added to sachets and other love mixtures. Jasmine attracts spiritual love. The flowers will draw wealth and money if carried, burned or worn. Jasmine will also cause prophetic dreams if burned in the bedroom. The scent is used to induce a peaceful sleep when the body needs it. If you can't get jasmine, Frankincense is another good herb or incense for the above ritual. Even though it causes prophetic dreams, we all know the dream state is a natural process of a restful night.

This magical herb is ruled by the Sun and

governed by the element Fire. The Main God associated with frankincense is Ra and Baal. It is used in rituals and spells of Protection, Exorcism, and Spirituality. Being Sacred to the Sun God Ra, frankincense is burned in rites of exorcism, purification and protection. It is said to accelerate spiritual growth and awareness. The sweet smell will also help you sleep at night but not as well as Jasmine.

Gardenia is a wonderful flowering herb that is used for Health, Healing, Love, Peace, Psychic Awareness, and Spirituality. Place fresh blossoms in the room of someone ill, or on healing altars to aid their recovery process. Add dried petals to healing mixtures. Dried gardenia is scattered around a room will induce peaceful vibrations. Gardenias are used in love spells, and to attract good spirits during rituals. Gardenias have a very high spiritual vibration and therefore can be used in many other spells and incantations to gain favor with the spirits.

As a new practitioner you now have learned that the ways of the old ones were simple and very

spiritual. With a deep connection with the earth and its vibrations, we live a life very near the first ones. Biblically, mankind was made of the earth, and to a degree we will concur. We use Crocus and Cubebe for Love and to bring about visions and The Cuckoo-flower for Fertility and to strengthen the bonds between Lovers. The simple Cucumber when used ritually and in everyday life for Chastity, Healing, and Fertility. Plus it also makes a wonderful addition to any salad. So using this herbal vegetable is easy for spells.

Practitioners can use Cowslip for Luck. It is a Feminine Herb ruled by Venus and governed by Water. Cowslip is also used in love spells. A woman who washes her face with milk infused with cowslip will draw her beloved closer to her. It can induce contact with departed loved ones during dreams so be very careful in its use and the frequency of use. Speaking with those who have passed into the next realm is one of the great powers granted by the creators and is one of the twelve powers of creation. If this is your talent, you are truly blessed.

The simple spice Curry can be used in protection amulets and Cumin for Protection, Fidelity, and rites of Exorcism. It should be noted that as a new practitioner you should never attempt to cast spirits or order them around, this can be extremely dangerous. If you are one of the people who have been given this gift of the creator, you are powerful indeed. This is one of the twelve powers given by the creator and it is extremely rare. To be able to control the spirits is one of the powers the creators were very reluctant to give to mankind. They feared that mankind would use it to challenge their authority over the husks that walk among us.

You ask, what is a husk? A Husk is a human that is a total shell. There is nothing inside. If a spirit of the dead or other spirit wishes to live and walk among the use, they may enter the husk to carry out their earthly tasks. Husks will take on the personality of the spirit and in some cases, will live here for a very long time.

The Dandelion is a masculine herb ruled by Jupiter and governed by Air. It is used in

Divination, welcoming, messages. It too has many uses and properties. The ground root can act as a coffee substitute, and the flowers make a lovely wine. A superb cleansing tonic and the milky juice is a diuretic, a tonic and a relief for common stomach problems. Use a handful of flower tops to 1 pint of boiling water, steep 10 minutes and strain. Drink this several times a week. Use the milky latex from the stem, rub on a wart several times daily and soon it's gone. This herb is also good for night blindness.

Dandelions are a cheap and good food source as well. Used in its entirety as wine, food, ointments and more. Dandelion greens are wonderful in salads, sautéed or steamed. They taste like chicory and endive, with an intense heartiness overlying a bitter tinge. The leaves are more nutritious than anything you can buy. They're higher in beta-carotene than carrots. The iron and calcium content is phenomenal, greater than spinach. You get vitamins B-1, B-2, B-5, B-6, B-12, C, E, P, and D, biotin, potassium, phosphorus, magnesium, and zinc by using a tasty, free

vegetable that grows on virtually every lawn. The root contains the sugar insulin, plus many medicinal substances. This herb should be the practitioners best friend and always available for any situation. Pick them in early morn before the dew has left. Make sure to wash because of lawn and external pesticides.

Another flowering herbal that's very useful is the Daisy. Daisy is a Feminine herb ruled by Venus and governed by Water. A nice flowering herb used to decorate the house at Midsummer's Eve to bring happiness to the home and to obtain the blessings of faeries. Daisies are also worn at Midsummer for luck and blessings. In the old times, young maidens would weave and wear daisy chains in their hair to attract their beloved. Because of its prophetic properties ancients use this herbal flower for unmarried maidens in whom the petals were taken off in order with the chant, "He Loves Me, He Loves Me Not." The last petal would prophesize if the maid was loved or not. This soon became a popular game among young girls and still is used today. Daisies are also used

in spells of Lust and Luck.

There is an old tradition connecting the daisy with the Thunder God, and hence it is sometimes spoken of as the 'Dun Daisy.' The ancients dedicated it to Artemis, the goddess of women, considering it useful in women's complaints. In Christian days, it was transferred to St. Mary Magdalene and called Madelyn or Maudlin Daisy after her.

Damiana is the herb of Lust, Love, and Visions. This herb is smoked in a pipe or drank in teas. It will promote heightened awareness and more intense sexual energy. Used in conjunction with other smoking herbals can promote astral projection and future quests. This herbal should be kept in the practitioner's magic cabinet. But used lightly because of its powerful magic.

There are so many things that the creator has made for our use that it would take a lifetime to learn them all. This is the main reason the Creators separated the powers and made them specific to different practitioners. Each practitioner will have a general knowledge of all the powers; however,

some will excel in certain ones. This is the main reason a group is necessary. If all the powers are to even come together in one circle, it is written there shall be a new Eden on earth again. This is what every circle, grove, or coven strives for. To the best of my knowledge, this has not occurred in all of recorded history.

At this stage you have discovered that the vibrations of the plants and stones speak to you, so please use the lessons herein as a guide only. I'm sure that when you are working with herbs, there is a secret knowledge that will emerge and you will know the best use for most of the herb. It comes natural with your experience and talents. You are gaining the abilities through the rituals and spirit world to use herbs and stones. Your witches' stone is called the Bloodstone.

Bloodstone is for idealism and for strengthening the will to do good. It Helps those inclined to extremes, wards off harmful vibrations, calms negative emotions and encourages a pleasant disposition. Mediums use bloodstone as a means of contacting the spiritual world. Also used to

purify blood and detoxify organs (especially liver, kidneys, and spleen) and to help stop bleeding. The Color is black/red, flecked. Because this stone was so widely held by the practitioner in the early days, the bloodstone is said to represent the blood of Christ Jesus. The Christian legend of the origin of bloodstone says that it was first formed when some drops of Christ's blood fell and stained some jasper at the foot of the cross. Bloodstone gems have been embellished with a thorn-crowned head of Jesus so placed that the red of the bloodstone simulate drops of blood trickling down his hair and face.

Bloodstone is a powerful tool for warding off the evil eye as well as driving away night demons, and guarding against deception. It is considered an enabling stone that brings the possessor the things he desires as well as the one of the stone for March. Bloodstone and Sage are the items most used in your magical workings. Practitioner always carries her special bloodstone on their person.

Sage is a Masculine herb ruled under the

planet Jupiter and governed by Air. It is used in rituals and spells of Immortality, Longevity, Wisdom, Protection, and Wishes. Tradition holds that those who eat sage become immortal both in wisdom and in years. Sage is used in wish manifestations, healing spells and to attract money. Sage absorbs negativity and misfortune. Burn it to consecrate a ritual space and cleanse your magical tools. Carry it as an herb of protection. Smolder Sage to promote healing and higher spiritual learning. Sage is used in spells for Protection, Wisdom, Health, Money and Riches, Spirituality. Sage is an all-purpose herb that is used in ninety percent of all practitioners' rituals.

Daffodils are the herbal flowers used in Love, Fertility, and Luck Rituals. Daffodils are used as a gift to the angel/ spirit Anael.

Anael is one of the seven angels of creation. He is Prince of the Archangels and ruler of the Friday angels. Anael exercise dominion over the planet Venus. He is the angel of sexuality and love. He is one of the luminaries concerned with human sexuality and is governor of the second heaven.

There he is in charge of prayer ascending from the first heaven. In addition he controls kingdoms and kings on earth and has dominion over the moon. He is the patron angel of Students, Teachers & Learning, often associated with the astrological sign of Libra. He is a powerful angel to aid you in love spells and potions. For a simple love spell use this one:

Cast this spell on a Friday as Venus, planet of love and romance, also rules this day. You will need:

One piece of Rose Quartz Crystal

One red rose

One red Apple

One green candle

One pink candle

One oil burner and rose essential oil

At a quiet time when you will not be disturbed gather all your equipment together, thinking as you are doing this of the love you wish to invite into your life. Light the oil burner and the two candles. Place the Rose in front of the candles. Hold the Rose Quartz in your hand and gazing into

the candle flame repeat the Angel Invocation below:

Archangel Anael I invoke thee on this Venus eve To grant me my wish of love I ask for love eternal and true May the flame of the candle burn in honor of you The fragrance of the Rose Carries afar Anael, Great One of Power grant me my heart's desire So Mote It Be

Thank the Archangel Anael for helping you and leave the candles to burn out. Eat the Apple and save the seeds. Place the Rose, the Apple seeds and the Rose Quartz Crystal on a window ledge where they will attract the magic of the moon. The following morning as soon as you awake, plant the Apple seeds in a pot with suitable soil. Look after your seeds in a caring way and as the seedlings begin to grow love will come into your life. Keep the rose in a vase and when it wilts dry the petals and keep them in a special place along with your Rose Quartz as a keepsake of your love spell. Anael is sometimes referred to by the names Anahel, Haniel, Aniel, Hamiel, Onoel, and

Hanael.

With the above spell, you can see that the spirits and powerful beings of creation are still a huge part of the practitioner's life. While the Practitioner is using the Cyclamen for their healings and spells, they are also invoking the ancient spirits to aid them.

Cyclamen and Deerstongue are herbs used in Fertility, Protection, Happiness, and Lust spells and rituals. Deerstongue is also used for Increasing Psychic powers but it is better to use Galangal. Galangal is a very helpful herb for the modern practitioner. This herb is used in rituals and spells of Protection, Lust, Health, Money, Psychic Powers, and Hex breaking. It is also known as Low John the Conqueror or Siamese Ginger. Use tincture for luck, money, protection, exorcism and psychic development. Ginger can be substituted. Burn this magical powder to break spells and curses. Deerstongue is also good for animal healing rituals and placing in amulets to win court cases and those things of that require a refined speech.

If the practitioner has a hard court battle, a talisman can be made in the following manner.

When the moon is in Libra or Sagittarius, make a tea from Galangal root. Place it in an Orange glass container and place in a cool place until the night before you are to appear in court. On the eve before, take a Justice card from a tarot deck and cast your circle. When this is done invoke the goddess of Justice for your tradition. Light an Orange Candle and think of the outcome you would like to have at the court hearing. In your mind's eye, see the Judge and send the Angel Elemiah to visit the Judge and plead your case in his dream. When you appear in court, the judge should be very Just to your cause.

Practitioners can use Danruta for Hex breaking, sleep, and protection from those spirits that dwell in the night. An herb called Devils Bit is also good for the same rituals.

One of My Favorite herb is Dill. It is easy to get and plentiful. It is called Anethon to the Greek

and is a Masculine herb ruled by Mercury and governed by Fire. It is Useful in love charms. Hang this powerful herb in a child's rooms to protect them from evil spirits and bad dreams. A culinary herb used to pickle and preserve. Dill Seeds draw money. Use the leaves for protection. The Flowers are used for love and defensive spells. One should place a dill seed in your shoe before entering a court building. Being the herb ruled under Mercury, it is assumed that dill has a vibration that will aid in communications.

Mercury being the prime planet of Communication, the practitioner should make sure when casting spells, making amulets, or doing their magical work to align their work with the vibrations of the planets as well as the items they use.

Mercury is about having a quick wit, quick thinking, possibilities, opinions, reasoning and the ability to rationalize things. Mercurial energy can be good or bad, so the practitioner should be very cautious when making requests to entities governed by Mercury. This Planet also prompts us to move

from one thing to the next and to get answers on both a physical and spiritual level. Further, Mercury's energy is both dexterous and perceptive. Mercury is never more than 28 degrees from the Sun; it takes about 88 days to complete its orbit of the Sun. It is neither masculine nor feminine energy and assumes the gender of the Sign it is in. It rules both Gemini and Virgo and the Third and Sixth Houses in astrological workings. If you are one that was blessed with the power of planets and astrology, focus can really release the power to a degree that anyone that passes your path you shall know of what planet governs them and how to align them for the betterment of their lives.

Raphael is the ruling Angel of the Planet Mercury. Bnaspol is the king of the planetary hours of Mercury. Acmbicu is the senior angel of both the element of Air and Earth associated with Mercury. Anodoin is the senior of the element Fire and Soaixnt is the senior of the element Water associated with this planet.

Elecampane is a Masculine herb which is also ruled by Mercury and governed by the earth. It

is Useful in raising spirits and to aid in meditation. Worn on the person it will repel poisonous bites. When we say Earth is the governing element, we are saying that as Elements and not planets. As with all the various sections of the magical arts, one should be a student of spiritual life and grow in knowledge.

The Archangel Raphael not only rules the planet Mercury, but is also the Archangel of Intuition, Healing, and Emotion. He can also aid you in starting new ventures. Raphael's direction is the West and Raphael's element is Air. If you feel connected to Raphael then you will enjoy receiving gifts of food, money, and comfortable clothing. You will enjoy both the receiving and giving of attention and the show of affection. You may find that you have a natural instinct for mothering. Raphael's Love heals the root chakra, located at the very end of your spine. This chakra provides the spiritual energy for grounding and security.

Being close to Raphael you will find that reds, burgundies, browns and black clothing help you to feel safe and attractive. You will want to

wear comfortable shoes and enjoy walking and being in nature. Rubies, silver, obsidian and jewelry made of glass and clay may also be attractive to you." Raphael's name means Divine Ruler. Besides healing, he grants mortals many gifts, among them joy, love, grace and creativity. He is associated with the element of Air. He encourages self-motivation. He is ruler of the all the angels of healing, and is also considered chief regent of the sun. He is a chief of the order of virtues and governor of the south. He claims the title of guardian of the west and ruling prince of the second heaven.

In biblical text he is guardian of The Tree of Life in the Garden of Eden. He belongs to the order of cherubim, the dominions, and the powers. Raphael's name means "Healed by God" or "God Heals". Raphael is the protector of the West, of twilight, evening, and autumn. Raphael's domain is the house of growth and transformation, so when this arch angel is your protector you are receptive to all these qualities and tuning into the physical world itself. Invoke Raphael if you are working for

global or personal healing on any level, from disease to abuse to addictions. He is the guardian angel of Gemini's, Libra's, and Aquarians. Use the following spell to summons Raphael to aide you in starting a new business. Cast this spell on a Wednesday. You will need:

One large cluster of Amethyst

One piece of Aventurine

One green ribbon

One red ribbon

Small amount of rice

You can perform this spell at any time of the day. Start at the right side of your entrance doorway.

Working in a clockwise direction, walk around your work place hold the Amethyst and the Aventurine in your right hand, with your left hand leave a few grains of rice on each window ledge (the rice symbolizes new growth). As you walk think of how you want your business to expand. When you arrive back at the point you started from repeat the Angel Invocation:

Archangel Raphael I invoke you to bless my

work Make this Business prosper Watch this
Business grow Make it Successful See all
My dealings to flow So Mote It Be

Thank the Archangel for helping you. Tie the green ribbon to your telephone to ensure orders flow in and lines of communication are kept busy. Tie the red ribbon to your order book or cashbook this will ground your money and ease cash flow problems. Place the Amethyst on your desk or workstation or near any equipment you use to earn your living. The Amethyst will aid your concentration and help you to put new ideas into practice. It will also help you to remain calm under pressure and alleviate stress. Keep the Aventurine in your purse or wallet to ensure financial security. As you note above you used Aventurine, Amethyst and rice. We are now learning how to combine the proper combinations to acquire the desired results.

Amethyst is basically used for meditation, soothing the mind and re-balancing the spirit. For protection from negative vibrations, healing and easing pain, purifying blood and encouraging sleep. It is also said to tone down drunkenness.

Amethyst is traditionally associated with St Valentine, a stone of love and friendship and a fortunate gem for lovers and friends. When worn with Carnelian, said to restrain those who are domineering and highly strung. The Amethyst is of Royal purple coloring. The Chevron Amethyst not only does it contain the properties of Amethyst, this is one of the finest third-eye stones, stimulating vision into other spheres of existence. Allow you to gain knowledge in spiritual healing. Amethyst was often used to make goblets because it was believed that those drinking from an Amethyst goblet could never get intoxicated.

The magical stone called Aventurine when in the color Green is used for healing; blue is used to uplift you, congestion, and circulation. Used at the heart chakra to activate, protect and clear that chakra. It balances male and female energies. This stone not only balances but also enlightens the intellect of the physical, emotional, and astral bodies. It brightens and makes ones leadership qualities more amplified.

The herbal grain Rice is used for Protection,

Rain, Fertility, and Money. Often seen in hand fasting rituals for enduring love which in the western tradition of pelting the bride and groom with rice. Perhaps the most curious use of rice in the wedding ceremony is to feed the uninvited evil spirits who always attended the ceremony. The rationale behind this practice was to ward off evil, as well-fed evil spirits would bring no harm to the blissful couple.

The Elder is a Feminine herb ruled by Venus and governed by Water. It is also known as Ellhorn, Elderberry, Lady Elder, and Black Berried Elder. Elder is an ancient Druid Sacred Tree. It is Sacred to the White Lady and Midsummer Solstice. The Goddesses associated with this Herb are Holda and Venus, especially when it is in flower form. Branches are widely used for magical wands. One must always be cautious to ask permission from the Elder Dryad before cutting or harvesting Elder limbs or leaves and berries to avoid very bad luck. It is also considered very bad luck to burn Elder wood. The leaves hung around the doors and windows will

ward off evil. Panpipes are made of elder stems. A dryad Elder Mother is said to live in the tree; she will haunt anyone who cuts down her wood. Stand or sleep under an elder on Midsummer Eve to see the King of the Fairies and his group pass by. The flowers are used in wish-fulfillment spells. The leaves, flowers and berries are strewn on a person, place or thing to bless it. Elder wands can be used to drive out evil spirits or negative thought forms. Music instruments made of elder have the same power of the wands. Do not burn elder wood; it is sacred to the goddess Hecate. Flowers are used for altar offerings.

The Planet Venus is a very important one to the practitioner. You will use things associated with Venus in all love spells. It is wise to keep all things associated with Venus as your friend. Venus is ruled by the Angel Anael. The Angel Nogahel is the planetary angel of Venus. Anael will send this Angel when he himself cannot appear.

Baligon is the king of the planetary hours of Venus. Aapdoce is the senior angel of the element Fire associated with Venus and Ahaozpi is the

senior angel of the element of Air associated with Venus. Alhctga is the senior angel of the element Earth and the angel Slgaiol is of the element Water associated with Venus.

The Guardian Angel Alhctga is also a minor charmed spirit that can assist you with luck and gambling. When the angels came to earth it was this very young angel that was imprisoned in the herb Devils Shoestring. Thusly we use this herb for Protection, Gambling, Luck, Power, and finding new Employment.

As any practitioner should know, the herb dragons' blood is from a tree. Dragons Blood is a Masculine Herb ruled by Mars and governed by Fire. This is the most misunderstood of all magical herbs. It is widely used in love, protection and purification spells. Keep a piece under the bed to cure impotency. It is carried for good luck. It can be dissolved in the bath for strong purification. When using Dragons Blood, be sure you know where it comes from. There are many things sold that is not true dragons blood. *Dracaena terminalis*, or Chinese Colli, yields Chinese Dragon's Blood,

used in China for its famous red varnish. In some countries syrup, yielding sugar is made from the roots (called Tii roots). It is an intoxicating drink and has also been used in dysentery and diarrhea, and as a diaphoretic. *Pterocarpus Draco*, of the East Indies and South America, yields a resin known as Guadeloupe Dragon's Blood, in small irregular lumps. *Croton Draco* or Mexican Dragon's Blood, is called Sangre del Drago, and is used in Mexico as a vulnerary and astringent. Others used are from *Croton hibiscifolius* of New Granada. *Croton sanguifolius* of New Andalusia, and *Calamus rotang* of the East Indies and Spanish America. Be wise with the usage and know that this Herb is also associated with Amber and Jet and used for removing obstacles.

Amber is the stone of sympathy and understanding, healing and attracting. Used for making and breaking spells, for calming and healing, uplifting and absorbing negative energies from the body. It is said to give children strength if hung around the neck and also to help rheumatism, toothache, headaches, goitre, bleeding, intestine

and bladder problems, earache, asthma, and bronchitis and throat irritations. Amber is hardened tree resin and often carried for luck. Amber represents the throat chakra. Amber is believed also to benefit the performances of actors and actresses, when worn with amethyst. Amber is said to possess the spirits of the ancients and sometimes it can be seen in the actual stone/resin.

Jet is actually not considered a real stone. This is actually a fossilized wood. It is used for ceasing fears, aids the grieving process (hence its popularity in the mourning jewelry of the Victorian period). It also is used for protecting the wearer from violence and illness. Used for headaches, toothache, glandular swelling, stomach pains, epilepsy and hysteria. It is considered in the past to be a powerful magical talisman to ward off negative influences. Color of this magical element is black. Jet can be used in conjunction with the herb Edelweiss in an amulet made in a blue bag for Invisibility and Bulletproofing. Not only is Jet and Edelweiss a wonderful herb but it will draw you closer to the Great Horned God, Cernunnous.

Other deities associated with the horned one are Herne the Hunter, a ghost of Britain; Pan, the Greek god of the woodlands; Janus, the Roman god of good beginnings with his two faces looking in opposite directions representing youth and age, and life and death; Tammuz and Damuzi, the son-lover-consorts of Ishtar and Inanna; Osiris, the Egyptian lord of the underworld; and Dionysus, the Greek god of vegetation and the vine, whose cult observed rites of dismemberment and resurrection. This could also be why the Eucalyptus plant became so popular in the early days.

Eucalyptus is considered the ultimate healing oil and herb. Add to all healing blends. Apply (undiluted) to the body to relieve colds. Also used in purification mixtures. For protection, carry the leaves.

The Herb, Eyebright is a Masculine herb ruled by the Sun and governed by Air. Anoint eyelids with the infusion when you seek clairvoyant visions and psychic dreams. Burn it as incense for clairvoyance and divination. Carry when you need to see the truth in a matter. The

Angels Raphael and Michael are guardians of this herb. Archangel Michael is the angel of Truth, Justice, Courage and Awareness. He has often been called the Angel of Miracles. Michael usually carries blue sapphire sword of Love. He will protect you against acts of fear and injustice. Michael element is fire. He is the Patron Angel of those born in the astrological sign of Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius.

When Michael protects you, you will desire to speak out and teach others about justice and equality. You will be attracted to Blue sapphires, diamonds, lapis, turquoise, and gold, silver and platinum when he is around you. Michael's name translates as "Who is like God?" He is the protector of the North, which is the house of night, winter and the color blue. Michael is the chief over the dominion order of virtues, angel of repentance, righteousness, ruler of the fourth heaven and conqueror of Satan. Michael was the angel that Moses communicated with in biblical story of the burning bush. He was the Angel who saved Daniel from the lion's den. He is also to be

the one who gently leads our souls to heaven according to the Catholic tradition.

Michael is the guardian of peace, harmony and global cooperation. While you are on your spiritual quest it is useful to remember the hidden teaching that Michael offers to us. He is also the Angel who rules Sunday. He is regarded as the patron of Humanity. A'albeil, an Angel in the service of Michael should always be summoned first in dealings with this guardian angel. Use this simple but effective spell to obtain wealth with the assistance of Michael. Cast this spell for wealth and prosperity on a Sunday.

You will need:

One piece of Citrine

One gold candle

One silver coin

One oil burner and Frankincense essential

oil

On the first stroke of Midnight light the oil burner and the gold candle. Hold the silver coin in

your right hand (this is your receiving hand). As you gaze into the flame of the candle repeat the Angel Invocation:

Archangel Michael I invoke thee to grant my wish tonight Grant me my wish, hear my pleas and ease my plight

Money luck not greed enough to fulfill my needs Grant my wish and I will remember to give as I have received So Mote It Be

Thank the Archangel for helping you and allow the candle to burn down. Keep the silver coin in your purse or wallet along with the Citrine, this will ensure you will always have enough money to fulfill your needs. Michaels Sapphires of Blue and the Citrine are stones that should be kept in your supplies for future use.

Citrine is used for improving confidence and self-image, for clarity of thought, cheerfulness, fairness to others and emotional control. It is helpful for circulation, toxic conditions, purifying the blood and for diabetes.

Sapphire is the Symbol of truth, associated

with saints, yogis, mystics and healers. Stimulates imagination and brings devotion, faith and peace. The vibrations of the sapphire curbs impulsiveness and encourage sympathy. If soaked in water with eyebrights, it makes healing eye lotion. It is also helpful for nervous complaints and asthma. Yellow Sapphire is used for Wealth, endurance, and fulfillment of ambition. Used as an Elixir it can eliminate toxins from the body. Sapphire aids in treatment of stomach, spleen, gallbladder and liver. Blue Sapphire is used to heal all parts of the body. It stimulates the throat chakra, intuition, psychic and astral selves are available thru this stone. Mystical knowledge of History and culture are attributed to this stone. Green Sapphire promotes Loyalty and assists one to remember dreams. It can stimulate the heart chakra. It is an ancient stone and known as the "Stone of fidelity." Black Sapphire is used for Protection, centering body and energy forces. Sapphire is A great stone to carry when you are looking for or maintaining a job.

Fennel is another herb sacred to the Horned God. Hang over doors with Saint John's Wort at

Litha to repel evil spirits. Carry fennel to influence others to trust your words. Try your best to eat fennel with every salad. Fennel is used for Protection, Healing, Health, and Purification. Use Fenugreek in spell bags to attract Money.

The Fern are used in rites of Rain Making, Protection, Luck, Riches, Eternal Youth, Health, and Exorcism.

The Druids classified ferns as sacred trees. Uncurled fronds of Male fern were gathered at Midsummer, dried and carried for good luck. The mysterious regeneration of ferns led to the ancient belief that their seed could confer invisibility. The root was added to love potions and the fronds eaten by those embarking on love quests. Male Fern: The fall gathered root is a remedy for tapeworm. Do not ingest alcohol while taking this herb. Overdose can result in blindness and death. Fern "seeds" are said to render one invisible if gathered on Midsummer's Eve. Moonwort, another Ferns are also said to be an herb of immortality but it must be gathered under a full moon only. This fern aids in opening locks and breaking charms, is

used in love spells and has the alchemical reputation of being an herb to convert quicksilver into silver. Use it to conjure money. Burned indoors, dried male fern fronds produce a very strong wall of protection. Burned outdoors they produce rain to help cleanse the earth.

Traveling practitioners are advised to place some Feverfew in their baggage. It is also known as Featherfoil or Flirtwort. Carry it as a ward against sickness or accidents during your journeys. It is used in rituals and spells of Protection, Purification, Defense, and Cleansing. A combination of the herb feverfew and the stone Angelite can aid you in a balanced astral journey.

The stone, Angelite aligns the physical body with the spiritual world. It provides a protective field when going on that astral journey to meet with your spirit guides. It is great for telepathic communication both sending and receiving. Good for getting introduced to ones totem spirit. Agelite helps you stay on the path in Astral Travel. It is known as the "Stone for raising the state of conscious awareness." The vibrations of this stone

get rid of anger. Place this stone in a staff made of the Silver Fir for a powerful rod of power.

The Silver Fir is also known as the Birth Tree. It is one of the Druid sacred tree and first trees of creation. The needles are burned at childbirth to bless and protect the mother and baby. Burn the bark and needles for Happiness, Harmony, Peace, Inspiration, and Wisdom. The Birch or Silver Fir tree is the place where the seventy amulet angels or spirits of childbirth resides. These can be invoked when needed by simple invocations and rites that will be described later. Lailah is the patron Spirit of Childbirth and the ruler of all other spirits of childbirth. It may be necessary to summons this Great Spirit to aid you.

Use Flax, also called Linseed for healing oil. It is used in spells for Money, Protection, Beauty, Psychic Powers, and Healing. Newborn babies are placed in a flax field to sleep so they will grow attractive. The blue flowers are worn as a preservative against sorcery. Sprinkle the altar with flax seeds while performing healing rituals or include it in healing mixtures. Use the following

method to make an amulet for the expecting practitioner.

Take a container made of wood. Mix the following ingredients in your wooden container:

1/2 tablespoon lemon balm 1 teaspoon
lemon verbena 3 tablespoons lavender 2
tablespoons rose petals 1 teaspoon mugwort 7
drops jasmine oil
1 teaspoon of flax or linseed oil.

After mixing the ingredients, tie them up in a light blue cloth, visualizing the discomforts of pregnancy being soothed away. Now put in your bath water or in the stuffing of your pillow. You can invoke your guardian spirit to guard it from contamination of other spirits.

As we see the use of lavender above, this herb is also one of those that a practitioner should always keep on hand and ready to use. Lavender is a very soothing effect on most people.

Lavender is ruled by Mercury and governed by the air. It is a Masculine herb and primarily used for Love, Protection, Sleep, Chastity, Longevity, Purification, Happiness, and Peace.

Lavender is another essential of any practitioner's cabinet. It has also been called Elf Leaf and Spike. Lavender is thrown into bonfires at Midsummer as an offering to the Gods and Goddesses. An ingredient of love spells, its scent is said to attract men. Lavender in the home brings peace, joy and healing. Lavender attracts elves and nature spirits. This herb should be burned for purification and peace. Always burn it at Litha (Summer Solstice) as an offering. The odor of lavender is conducive to long life and so should be smelled as often as possible.

Foxglove is also known as Fairy Gloves, Fairy Fingers, or Dead Men's Bells. This Druid's sacred herb is associated with the Fairies and Elves. This plant is poisonous and should be used very carefully. Foxglove is grown in gardens to protect the house and yard from evil spirits. From the Eleventh to Eighteenth century foxglove was used to cure dropsy and is sometimes attributed to the death of many because of overdoses by the early untrained physicians.

Ginger is a Masculine herb. It is ruled by the

planet Mars and governed by Fire. Ritual uses include Love, Money, Success, and Power. Many practitioners eat ginger before a ritual to draw power of the herb. Grow Ginger in and around your house to attract money. Powerfully spicy, Ginger essential oil is useful in sexuality, love, courage, and money attracting blends. Ginger is a main component of most Success spells, or to ensure the success of a magical operation.

The herb Ginseng is commonly used in its rites of Love, Wishes, Healing, Beauty, Protection, Creative Work, and Protection. Ginseng can be used as a substitute for Mandrake. The root is carried to attract love and to guard one's health, to draw money, and to ensure sexual potency. Ginseng will also bring beauty to all who carry it. The Chinese has used this in teas for a sex stimulant for many centuries. A simple spell using Ginseng to bring a lover closer follows.

Set a red or pink candle infused with love in a bowl of water. Add Ginseng to the water and let set while you see in your mind's eye the person you wish to attract. Drip water onto a picture of

your beloved. Light the candle to let it burn
Visualize yourself closer to the person while
saying:

"Sacred water flow from me, to draw
him/her ever near. As endless rivers of the goddess
run to sea, Show His/her path to me is clear." "A
love that's true, once he'll/she'll find, And know
his/her journey's end. And in his/her heart and soul
and mind, He'll/she'll know our lives should
blend."

Let the candle burn; do not put it out for
doing so you may extinguish the spell you have
cast. Always remember to also ask that if this be
the will of the creator or you may cross over into
the realm of the Sisters and Brothers of the
shadows. You may also get someone who instead
of Love you has great lust and no really love. As a
wise practitioner you should always be very
specific as to what you are asking, because
sometimes when forcing the shadows of magic, you
may get what you don't want by not being specific
and to the point when dealing with spells of
attraction and love. If you do not have Ginseng,

you can use Gotu Kola which is a good substitute.

Gotu Kola is also good for Meditation. It attracts longevity, sexual potency and love. Used in spells for this purpose. Here it would be prudent to remind the Practitioner of the main rule of the craft, "To Harm None without Justification". If you get your love and drawing spell to strong, use the herb Pistachio to break the love spell.

Golden Seal is used for healing and money. Sprinkle an infusion of Golden Seal Root that has been combined with a stone of Mookaite and some May apple around your place of business to increase profits. May Apple is always used for Money and financial matters.

Another simple herb that is abundant to the practitioner is Hawthorn. This herb is also known as May Witch or May blossom, Quick Thorn, Whitethorn. Haw, Hazels, Gazels, Hagthorn, Ladies' Meat, Bread and Cheese Tree. It has long been associated with Fertility, Chastity, Fishing Magic, and Happiness. It is one of the Druid sacred trees. Hawthorn is the classic flower to decorate a maypole. An herb of fertility, it finds its

place in most hand fasting and weddings. Hawthorn is always to be used on Beltane. Wands made of hawthorn have great power. The blossoms are highly erotic. Use for Fertility magic, Protection, Defense, and Chastity. Hawthorn is sacred to the fairies and elves, and is part of the tree fairy triad of Britain "Oak, Ash and Thorn".

Hawthorn is generally the unlucky tree and its name, translated from Irish Laws, had the meaning "harm". The Goddess, under the name Cardea, cast spells with the Hawthorn. In many cultures, the month of the Hawthorn (May) is a month of bad luck for marriages. The Hawthorn blossom, for many men, has the strong scent of female sexuality and was used by the Turks as an erotic symbol. The monks used the bad luck story by saying the Crown of thorns was made of Hawthorn. A Hawthorn Tree in the center of a vineyard of grapes was thought to be a very good omen for childbirth and a strong year for the grape crop.

Grape not only was used for wines and jellies, but the practitioner uses them for Fertility,

Garden Magic, Mental Powers, and Money. Grape is the fruit of Bacchus and is sometimes called Fruit of Bacchus in spells and rituals.

Hazel has always been the Witches plant. It stands for Luck, Fertility, Anti-Lightning, Protection, and Wishes. Hazel is also called European Filbert. Hazel is another tree sacred to the Druids. It is the ancient Celtic tree of wisdom, inspiration, and poetry. Hazel nuts are eaten before divination. Diancecht, the god of healing, invented a porridge that would cure colds, sore throats, and worms. Wands of Hazel symbolize white magic and healing. Forked sticks are used to find water or buried treasure. The Hazel is a tree of wisdom. A Wand made of hazel and the stones of your birth are preferred as your special personal magical staff. We will discuss the vibrations of the Birth stones and how they are used by the practitioner in Chapter Six.

Heather is used for Protection, Rain Making, and Luck. Heather is a Goddess herb associated with the planet Venus and sacred to Isis. It is carried as a guard against rape and other violent

crimes, or just to bring good luck. Heather and fern burned together can attract rain. Heather has also long been used to conjure ghosts. Red Heather is used for passion, to start or end an affair. The Purple variety is used for spiritual development. White Heather for cooling passions of unwanted suitors. Lady's Slipper is another good herb used for and associated with the Goddess. When dealing with herbs associated with the Goddess, it is always a very good ideal to do the ritual invocation of the goddess.

In this ritual the Goddess becomes incarnate in the High Priestess which makes it possible for her to bless and consecrate the magical herbs and the rite. The High Priestess stands in front of the altar with her back to the alter. She holds the wand in her right hand and the scourge in her left. She crosses her wrists and crosses the wand and scourge above them while holding them close to her breast which symbolizes that she holds the power she is summoning close to her heart. She stands looking towards the moon and says:

Oh Great goddess Diana, she who rules the

night In all your grace and beauty I honor, Shine on us and watch over our coven, Unlock the gates of all our wishes and dreams; Rise bright your powers and make them clear. On Earth and sky and sea, both far and near. These spells we cast, that you may hear

Guard your servant, without any fear wherever leaf or tree may grow, wherever tide and air may flow,

Let your powers rise, till all is past. O secret queen of night make your presence at last at this enchanted witches hour we ask your presence and all your power

The High Priest kneels before the High Priestess and gives her the Five Fold Kiss. He says, as he does this:

Blessed be thy feet, that has brought you here. Blessed be thy knees, that shall kneel at the sacred altar for the honor of the goddess. Blessed be thy womb, without which all things have come forth in the generations of man. Blessed be thy lips, that shall utter the Sacred Names.

The High Priest kneels again and starts her invocation by saying:

"I invoke thee and call upon thee, Mighty Mother of us all, bringer of all fruitfulness; by seed and root, by bud and stem, by leaf and flower and fruit, by life and love do I invoke thee to descend upon the body of this, thy servant and priestess."

Still kneeling, the High Priest he spreads his arms out and down, with the palms forward and says:

"Hail Aradia! From the Amalthean Horn Pour forth thy store of love; I lowly bend Before thee, I adore thee to the end, With loving sacrifice thy shrine I adore. Thy foot is to my lip my prayer be herby borne upon the rising incense smoke; then spend Thy ancient love, O Mighty One, descend To aid me, who without thee am forlorn."

The High Priest stands up and steps backwards. The High Priestess draws the Invoking Pentagram of Earth in the air with the wand and says:

"Of the Great Mother dark and divine Mine the scrounge, and mine the kiss; the five point star of love and bliss Here I charge you in this sign."

This is the point where the Goddess has become one with the High Priestess and the ritual continues you can bless all items brought before you. This is the time that all your herbs and ritual items should be magically charged.

Charge your Heliotrope to aid you when you are performing rites of Exorcism, for Prophetic dreams, Healing, Wealth, and for spells of Invisibility. Let your Priestess Bless your Black Hellebore for it can be used as a Protection herbal in pouches and sachets. It is not to be ingested because it is poison. Black Hellebore is also known as Red Chamomile, Pheasant's Eye, Adonis, and Red Morocco, Rose-a-rubie, Red Mathes. Sweet Vernal. Another poison herb that should be used with care is the herb of History and Lore, hemlock.

Hemlock is also known as Herb Bennet, Spotted Corobane, Musquash Root, Beaver Poison, Poison Hemlock, Poison Parsley, Spotted

Hemlock, and Kex. Kecksies and has been used for centuries as a Poison as well as to Destroy sexual drives. If this plant is ingested in quantity it will cause vertigo and then death. Because its symptoms of poisoning are less painful than cowbane this is preferred in death spells and spells of destruction.

Hemp is the herb that most people are using today. Yes it's illegal in its stage as marijuana, but used for religious purposes, it is a permissible herb for all practitioners. This herb is ruled by Saturn and is a feminine herb. It is governed by Water. It is used for Healing, Love, Vision, and Meditation. Hemp is primarily used in love spells and meditation. In modern years it has been found effective in treating glaucoma. By the plant being ruled by Saturn it would seem that its effects would be to make us active instead of lazy and able to concentrate better.

Saturn is much like Father Time; Saturn implores us to look at the clock. Is there time for everything we want to do, or are there limits? Those limitations are important to Saturn, and we

must learn to manage them. Restrictions are the province of this Planet, as is any form of discipline or delay. Saturn governs old age along with the lessons it teaches us. Structure, order and the way in which we conduct our affairs are all ruled by this ringed Planet. Herbs that are governed by this planet will sometimes be reflective in nature.

Henbane is also known as Common Henbane, Hyoscyamus, Hog's-bean, Jupiter's-bean, Symphonica, Cassilata, and Cassilago, Deus Caballinus, and Henbell. The French call it Jusquiame. Henbane is used in sleep potions but is highly toxic. Ingested in large quantities is deadly. Henbane is a preferred poison because ingested it causes sleep and then death. Henbane is added to breads and teas to rid yourself of your enemies. Be careful to not ingest the items yourself. This is really not the preferred method of dispatching ones enemies because there is the problem of eating of the death amulets yourself. If this be the type of magic you need, perhaps it is better to make a Mojo to bring your enemies down.

If you need to break up a love affair, make

the mojo using Eucalyptus to drive away pestiferous people, Marjoram to drive away those who would harm your family. Oregano Mojo's will keep troublesome in-laws away. Black Pepper will move someone out of way from you. While red pepper will drive away, as in breaking up someone. Use the following ritual spell to accomplish this dark task. You will need the following items:

1 Black Couple Candle or Black Figural Break-Up

1 bottle Crossing Oil

1 packet Crossing Sachet Powder

1 packet Crossing Incense Powders

1 packet Hotfoot Powder

1 packet Goofer Dust

1 Bottle containing

9 Pins, 9 Needles, 9 Nails, black dog hair, black cat hair

1 packet Devil's Shoe Strings Curio

1 packet Devil Pod Curio

1 packet Hyssop Herb

2 White Offertory Candles

Prepare this potion depending on your intended degree of severity, allowing you to choose just how much trouble you want conjure. In addition to the items here, you will need something personal from both parties, such as their hair, footprint-dirt, menstrual blood, semen, photos, business card, or the like. The more personal the object, the better this spell will work.

In addition, you should symbolically write their full names on two pieces of paper nine times. Use black ink for the one you want to have get away and red ink for the one you want to stay near you. Use black ink for both, if you want both to get away. Whatever item you use, those things, plus the name-papers, will be referred to as "the couple's personal items." Perform this Dark work during the waning of the moon.

Make the Crossing Incense Powders into cones. On the Black Couple Candle carve the couple's full names with the words Break up in your secret mystical alphabet Break up between their names. Dress the candle with Crossing Oil and sprinkle it with Crossing Powder.

For each of the next seven days burn a portion of the incense and one section of the candle. Pinch the candle out between times, never blow it out. During these seven days, you will work the spell itself.

The bottle contains nine Pins, nine Needles, nine Rusty Nails, the Hair of a Black Dog, and the Hair of a Black Cat. These are to cause pain, anger, emotional incompatibility, distance, and quarrelling between the couple so that they will "fight like cats and dogs" and seek to part from each other.

You have three types of powders that are used and each is designed to produce a certain result. The more you use the more mischief that will occur to the couple. Hotfoot Powder is to drive someone away and cause them to never return. Crossing Powder is to bring about bad luck, trouble, and illness on one or more persons. Goofer Dust is to mess people up seriously, it can cause them to have delusional thoughts and even drive them to the point of death. Choose only one or all of the powders. You can blend them together

for your desired effect.

Mix the couple's personal items with the powder(s) you have chosen. After this you will need to place all items in the bottle with the pins, needles, nails, dog hair, and cat hair. Seal the bottle tightly as you seal the couple's fate. Bury it under their doorstep or close to a place they must cross. As you do this, pray aloud for their disharmony and break-up in your own words; ask in the name of your God or Saint.

If you can't put it under their doorstep, hide it in a hollow tree where they can't find it, or carry it to the nearest graveyard and bury it. As you hide the item, pray to the spirits and the goddess for the death of their relationship. You can also carry it to a crossroads that the couple has to pass and throw it into center of the road while praying for them to travel apart from each other. When you have completed this ritual make sure you cleanse yourself. Wrap up any left-over candle wax, incense ashes, and unused materials in a piece of black cloth. Secure it with black thread and tie it. Throw it out at a crossroads or bury it in a

graveyard.

Because breaking folks up is an Enemy Trick and the rites belong to our brothers and sisters of the shadows, you must cleanse yourself and protect from retribution. To take off your sin, prepare a bath by steeping the Hyssop Herb in a pot of boiling rain water or spring water. Light the two white candles, stand between them, and pour the Hyssop bath over your head while reciting the 51st Psalm

"Cleanse me with Hyssop; wash me and I shall be whiter than snow".

For protection, drive the Nine Devil's Shoe Strings into the dirt across the path to your doorstep to tangle up anyone who may try to retaliate and cross you. Put the Devil Pods outside or behind your front and back doors to repel any evil work that may be directed toward you.

Hyssop is an herb used for Purification and Protection. Hyssop is a holy herb of the ancient Greeks, used to cleanse sacred spaces. It is the most widely used purification herb in rituals and spell craft. This is one of the essentials for the

practitioner's cabinet. We use this to sweep negative vibrations away and when we have crossed over to the grayer side of magic to bathe ourselves and cleanse us from retribution.

If it's just a single person that is causing you harm you wish to banish, this spell is the one to use.

Use a black candle, with a picture of the person placed underneath along with a piece of parchment with the person's name on it. Carve the Divine Names "Eel kanno taf" using your magical script onto the black candle.

Anoint the candle with Banishing Oil.

Burn for nine nights, each night reading Psalm 94. Put the candle out after Psalm is done. Use your finger and do not blow it out. On the last night let the candle burn all the way down. While the candle burns each night, meditate and focus with magical intent on the goals in your mind. Imagine the person leaving you alone. Send with your thoughts their evil deeds turning back onto themselves. Do this for about five

minutes each night before you pray the Psalm. Because this is basically a return spell, there is no need to worry about retribution. After each night to ease your mind you can drink a tea made of Chamomile and Mint. If you feel the need, you can strengthen this relaxed state and promote health with the use of Horehound.

Horehound has always been used for Protection, Mental Powers, Exorcism, and Healing. It is used in protective sachets and carried to guard against sorcery and idle thoughts and wishes. It is used in conjunction with other herbs in matters of Exorcism. It promotes mental strength and should always be placed in the rooms of sick people. A Horehound and Pyrite combination can reduce the negative effects of any spells that come back to you. In addition, Horehound candy, which contains only a slight amount, is great for sore throats.

The magical stone, Pyrite shields you from many forms of negative energy. It is an excellent stone to keep in one's possession when doing dangerous work. Pyrite aids in recognizing purity

of the universe. It enhances memory, provides recall of important information when needed.

The Hibiscus is not only a wonderful flowering plant but is also used for spells of Lust, Love, and Divination. It can be use in spells to assist in psychic growth, clairvoyance and to promote peace and tranquility. Hickory is good in legal Matters and High John the Conqueror can be used in Money, Love, Success, and Happiness.

High John the Conqueror root is one of the staples of African-American folk magic and the practitioner's magical herb supplies. Its use in mojo bags as ubiquitous as its qualities are varied, and its very name signifies power and prosperity to many.

To draw money to you using this herb wrap money around it and keep it in your pocket. Anoint the root regularly with John the Conqueror Oil, rubbing it in as you do so. Another money drawing spell with High John root is as simple. Wrap nine small pieces of Devils Shoestring root and a silver dime in a two-dollar bill. Always fold towards you as you fold the bill around the dime. Place all

in a green mojo bag and anoint it with Money Drawing Oil. Always wear this mojo charm when gambling or playing games of luck. Place it at the door of your business to draw money into your store.

When using High John in charms to exercise attraction over the opposite sex, fix the root in a red flannel charm bag along with a lodestone that has been dressed with magnetic sand. Anoint it with Come to me Oil or Love me oil and conceal it below the waist. For women who wish to make a powerful charm for sexual love, she might add Queen Elizabeth Root and use a strong musk oil or Yohimbe Bark. As you can see there are many uses and spells to assist us.

Chapter Six

Spells for Everyday Growth.

As our journey continues we will look more into the various uses of herbs, stones and invocations for your spells and chants. At this time I'm sure you have tried some of the lessons and spells. I hope that you are writing them down as you practice and the results of the spells and chants that you are doing. This will become your personal Book of Shadows. As we have seen in the previous chapter, rituals and spells are not only for Good, but sometimes for revenge and Justice. These spells of the darker sides are never recommended because of the prime rule, but sometimes it is necessary to defend yourself from those that would harm you or cause you grief. In addition, if your heart hurts for that which you have

not, the great creators would not wish the greatest creation of their hands to suffer. For this reason we have included the following spell of revenge. But please be just in your actions.

When someone you really dislike to a point of Hate has wronged you, use this spell to send to them the worst Justice of all. You will need the following items.

Seven White candles

A black candle or black stone, clay shaped in a human figure. It must be gender specific.

A stone of Epidote

Coffin nails

A packet of dried blackberry leaves

A piece of black clothe

A length of black thread

A hammer

A shovel or trowel to dig a hole

Goofer Dust or Graveyard Dirt

Crossing Oil or Hot Foot Oil

Start of a Saturday, the day of great Archangel Cassiel. Cast your magical circle in the

normal way, making sure that you cleanse the area and seal it by summoning the four guardians of the watchtower. From each side of your circle, with your sword, draw the sacred protective pentagram. The five arrows of the symbol represent the four elements of Earth, Air, Fire, and Water, together with Spirit. Cast a second magical protective circle around your altar, within the first magical circle.

Place a white candle at each point of the pentagram, and charge it with the element which it represents. You may also wish to place a stone representing that element or herb of the element.

Within your inner circle, take the figure and name it by carving or writing the enemy's name on it. Wrap the candle or statuette all over with the dried spiny leaves of blackberry vines. Lay this on the piece of black cloth and wrap it up, and tie the bundle closed with black thread. Now in your most powerful voice, conjure with the following words:

“O thou great and blessed angel Casiel on
your day I invoke (name) my angel
guardian, vouchsafe to descend from thy

holy mansions bringing thy holy influence and presence into these crystal stone, that I may behold thy glory and enjoy thy society and aid, both now and evermore. O thou that art higher than the fourth heaven, thou who knowest the secrets of ELANEL, thou who ridest on the wings of the wind and art endowed with superlunary motion; do thou descend and be present, I pray thee. If ever I have merited thy society, if my wishes are noble and just in thy sight, bring hither thine eternal Presence; deign to hold commune with me, in the name of the Great God who created all things of shadows and light, to whom the whole choir of all that exists continually sings: O MAPPA LA MAN. Protect me during these days Oh Great one, as I summons the legions that shall do my deed.

Now, in your most angry voice, tell the person what it is you want to send evil thoughts back to them and then hit the packet three times

with a hammer. Hit it really hard, to break it. Each day for seven days tell the figure what you want to send back to him or her and hit the packet three hammer blows. By the end of the seventh days, it should be pretty well pulverized.

On the seventh day enter your circle and repeat the above. This time you will need some fresh fruit. In a commanding voice say,

I conjure thee, Lucifage and Jesual, he who bore sin from his head, He who was then cast out of the dwelling place of the creator. By the great creator, he who created all things, by the creator who has power over all that is, I conjure thee by the Ineffable Names of the creator, ON, ALPHA and OMEGA, ELOY, ELOYM, YA, SADAY, LUX, MUGIENS, REX, SALUS, ADONAY, EMMANUEL, MESSIAS; and I adjure, conjure, and exorcise thee by the Names which are declared under the letters V, C, X, as also by the Names JEHOVAH, SOL, AGLA, RIFFASORIS, ORISTON, ORPHITNE,

PHATON IPRETU, OGIA, SPERATON,
IMAGON, AMUL, PENATON, SOTER,
TETRAGRAMMATON, ELOY,
PREMOTON, SITMON, PERIGARON,
IRATATON, PLEGATON, ON,
PERCHIRAM, TIROS, RUBIPHATON,
SIMULATON, PERPI, KLARIMUM,
TREMENDUM, MERAY, and by the most
high Ineffable names of the creator, GALI,
ENGA, EL, HABDANUM, INGODUM,
OBU ENGLABIS, do thou make haste to
come, send me your legions that they may
do my bidding. I conjure your servant,
Focalor to appear to do my bidding,
having a comely and human form, in no
wise repulsive, that he may answer in
real truth whatsoever I shall ask him, and
do whatsoever I may need to seek justice
for the wrong that hath been done. That
when he appear, he do so being also
powerless to hurt me, or any person
whomsoever that is protected by me,
either in body or soul.

When you are finished, and have properly dismissed the spirits and closed the circle, take the bundle outdoors to a cemetery, dig a deep hole, throw the packet in, and cover it up. Walk away and don't look back. Your demons will take care of the intended one, so you should never think about it again. Just for safeties sake, set the good karma vibrations in motion by always doing good to others to balance what you have done. Burn the herb Epidote for three days after your ritual.

It is understood that it may be difficult to find the powder or oil that is needed for your ritual. If this is the case within these pages you will find many hard to find recipes for your use.

To make Goffer Dust use the following recipe.

On a night when the moon is full, go to your local cemetery. Find the grave of someone that you know has died an unnatural and violent death and gather some of the earth from the grave, thus you have graveyard dust. Make sure that you dig at least a feet from the top soil. Mix the dirt you have

gathered from the graveyard with Sulphur Powder, Rattlesnake Skin, Black pepper, cobwebs, water gathered from a tree stump, and hair of dogs and cats. Let the ingredients dry and then pound them into a powder and store in a black container. You now have a potent gofers dust for your rituals. You can have graveyard dust simply by mixing Sulphur with the Graveyard dirt you have gathered.

Epidote enhances perception, gets rid of criticalness. It is helpful in the use to overcome and beat dehydration. As an Elixir it can soften and smooth skin as well as deflect negative spells that may come back to harm you. Crush and mix with Honey and aloe for the best results.

The herb Hops, is a wonderful herb used in making Beer. It is a favorite in spells of exorcism as well as healing. Place in a sleep pillow with other sleep herbs such as lavender and chamomile to promote restful sleep. It can also be added to healing mixtures and incenses to increase their potency.

Honeysuckle is called the nectar of the gods. This sweet smelling herb is used in spells of

Money, Psychic Powers, and Protection. Practitioners of old suck out the nectar to increase their psychic powers. Lightly crush the fresh flowers and then rub on the forehead to heighten psychic powers. Place a reef of honeysuckle flowers around a green candle to attract money.

Irish Moss is another good herb to attract wealth. It is also used for Luck, and Protection. Irish Moss is one of the herbs used in rain and weather spells. Irish Moss is also used to make a strong rain powder for your spell castings. This is done in the following manner.

Take some of the Irish moss and let it soak in natural waters that have gathered in the forest during a hard rain. This process should be done for at least a fortnight. Once you have claimed your moss, grind it to a very fine powder and add houseleek. You now have a rain powder for use in your rituals, exorcism, and charms. Store this Powdered Rain in a Blue jar or container.

Houseleek or ayegreen is used in spells for Luck, Protection, and Love. This herbal is so potent that King Charlemagne ordered all house

should grow it on their roofs to protect it from lightning and evil demons. Some call this plant the live forever plant cause it is used also in rituals of immortality. Its beautiful pink or purple flowers are used for decorating altars and as gifts to the high priestess in wishing her an immortal life.

Horseradish is used in rites of Purification and Exorcism. A Piece of Horseradish in your purse as the year turns new, and you will have money the rest of the year. Eaten, it can help drive out evil spirits.

The wise practitioner shall use Huckleberry for Luck, Protection, Dream Magic, and Hex Breaking. But the stronger for hex breaking is Hydrangea. Lady's Mandel can help keep you young and in love while planting Larch will act as an anti-theft amulet to your house and property.

As you gather your herbs and items of power, always follow the primal rules of the Creator and do not harm the land which has given you so much. When you reap the harvests of your lands or gather her bounty, you shall not reap one corner of the field, nor glean the entire garden of

herbs. Nor shall you gather the fallen fruits of the orchards. These you shall offer to the Earth Mother, in direct return, or through offerings made to your circle. These items also can be given to sustain its Priests and Priestesses. As it is known, it is your duty to care for the land that has given to you and honor those who have guided you.

In the event that you do experience a theft, here's a simple ritual to cause it to return and the thief to get his just rewards. You will need some larch, an orange candle, a black candle, and a piece of rope or a thick string. Cast the protective circle and call on the guardian Angel Arauchia. Arauchia They Help you discover falsehoods and those who Betray you and taken things that belong to you.

At the hour before the day starts anew, place the candles in a triangle, make sure it is far enough apart so you can sit in the center. Take the string and say,

“Great Angel Arauchia, Those that betray my trust have taken (mention what was stolen), reveal to me those that conspire

and steal that which is your servant.”

As you sit say this simple prayer seven times. With each time tie a knot into the rope. When you have seven knots tied. Take the rope and lay it outside your door. Within a week, the item that has been stolen will return and you or will know those that betrayed you so that you may approach them for their transgression against you. It is suggested that at the end of the ritual you offer the herb Iris to the angel for Purification of your request and wisdom to know what is just when you receive your answers. You can also make a Thief's Powder to sprinkle around the scene of the crime and discover who has the stolen item. To make this powder, mix Galangel, Verivert, Poke Root, and Hydrangea. You can use talc powder or flour as an agent to blend then together.

Knotweed which is also known as Armstrong, Pigweed, Red Robin, and Sparrow's Tongue is another good herb to use in dealing with deceit and treachery. This herb is ruled by Saturn and is a Feminine herb. Earth governs it and its primary use is in Binding and Health. Use

Knotweed to 'bind' woes and miseries, hold some knotweed in your hand and cast a binding to stop those who do you evil. Pour your problems into the herb; see it absorbing them and then burn it. When carried, knotweed strengthens and protects the eyes and assists you in seeing the truth of things. Another way to cause those that tell you untruths to cease is to touch them with Untruth powder. This Powder acts as a lie detector and causes the one who lies to stop and apologize.

To make Untruth Powder gather some Mint, Rose, and Nutmeg. When the moon is waxing, mix them all in the light of the waxing moon. Add a portion of Blessed water to combine all the herbs. Let it sit in Open sunlight until it is dry. We all know that truth is best when seen in the light of day. When it has dried, crush it into a fine powder and store it in a Blue glass bottle. When you have need for it, place it on your hands and touch the person you think has lied to you or offer it to them in a tea. They will be forced to stop lying and tell you the truth. If the truth really hurts, use the herb Jobs Tears to comfort you.

The Herb known as Jobs Tears is used for Healing. This succulent herb is used in wish magic and is good for absorbing pain. The Practitioner can use Jobs Tears generously and make wish bags or necklaces. With these powerful charms, all your wishes are attainable. Add the herb Larkspur for Health and Luck.

Lemon is a feminine herb, ruled by the Moon and governed by Water. It is used in rituals and spells for Longevity, Purification, Love, and Friendship. Lemon juice can be mixed with holy water and used to wash and cleanse negative psychic energies from items. The juice can also be added to a bath during the full moon for cleansing and purification. The dried flowers and peel are added to love sachets and mixtures, and the leaves are used in lust teas. A lemon tree grown from a seed you have eaten can be a gift to a loved one, although admittedly this is a long process. Lemon pie, served to a spouse, will help strengthen fidelity, and a slice of fresh lemon placed beneath a visitor's chair ensures that your friendship will last. Lemons may be used in making voodoo dolls

and poppets.

Lemongrass growing around your house will repel snakes. It is used in rituals and spells of Lust and Psychic powers. Obitsu Powder is made with this herb. This powder is a very powerful uncrossing powder. A wise practitioner should always have an ample supply on hand. It removes medium level hexes and protects you from spells and dark magic.

To begin making Uncrossing Powder, cast your circle in the normal method on the day of Asasiel (Thursday), do this in the Hour of Hantiel (the third hour of the day). When you are done, call forth Arias, the angel of sweet smelling herbs to bless your working. Gather Jasmine, Violet, Lemongrass, and a small portion of Citronella. Cleanse your working area and tools with the ritual of salt and fire. Bless them with holy water and you are ready to start. Combine all herbs in a stone container. Mix them well and cast the protective and reflective energies into

the herbs as you mix them. Once finished, store them in a Amber colored glass jar. When the need arises you will have this Powerful Uncrossing Powder to rid yourself of dark powers that are cast against you.

Asasiel is the Angel of Thursday, who shares his rule with Sachiel and Cassiel. Assasiel is also one of the presiding spirits of the planet Jupiter he will gladly assist, with pleasure all persons who are ruled by Jupiter and can be called in dealings with items governed by this planet. Asasiel usually appears in the shape of a glowing middle age man with a purple light as a cloak.

Lemon Verbena is used in rituals of Purification and Love. It is often called simply Verbena. Lemon Verbena is worn to make oneself attractive to the opposite sex. Use this in Dream magic to stop dreams. If this is not available and you still need an herb for a powerful love spell, consider Licorice. Licorice is used for Love, Lust, and Fidelity. Licorice is mainly used in fidelity spells and in sachets or carried to attract love. It is

also used to persuade another to agree with you, secretly arrange for them to carry this herb and they will start to see things your way. A very good way to accomplish this feat of getting it on their purpose is to give them Licorice candy.

Mullein is also known as Hag's Taper, Candlewick Plant, Aaron's rod, Velvet Plant, and Shepherd's Club. The leaves in powder form are sometimes referred to as Graveyard Dust and can be substituted as such. Some of the ritual uses of this herb include Protection, Divination, Health, Courage, Determination, Exorcism, and Defense. Carry as protection against negative spirits and animals. Use in place of candles where a flame is not possible. Added to incenses of protection, courage, and to attract the opposite sex, or to gain ancient knowledge. It is a very powerful herb in exorcism.

We have discussed the herb sandalwood and seen it used in previous pages. Sandalwood is a feminine herb ruled by the Moon and governed by water. Sandalwood oil placed on the forehead aids in focusing the mind. The scent opens the highest

spiritual centers. This makes it the appropriate incense for rituals, exorcisms, and healings. The powdered wood is thrown in the directions as an offering to the elements of fire to bring protection and consecration to any ceremony. Mix it with lavender to enhance contact with the spiritual world. Mix it with frankincense for a higher spiritual vibration. The scents of frankincense and sandalwood have some of the highest vibrations inherent in any of the known plant.

Sandalwood is to resonate with the Angels and spirits of creation. Rose is another herb used with that level of frequency, thus attracting or eliciting the highest spiritual vibrations from within the cosmos and ourselves. Sandalwood is one of the most valuable woods in the world. Sandalwood powder is burned during protection, healing and exorcism spells. When mixed with lavender it makes incense for conjuring spirits. This fragrant wood possesses very high spiritual vibrations and is mixed with Frankincense and burned at séances and Full Moon rituals. Powdered sandalwood can be scattered about a

place to clear it of negativity. Sandalwood beads are protective and promote a spiritual awareness when worn. Sandalwood oil placed on the forehead helps to focus the mind. Another powerful all-purpose herb is Myrrh.

Myrrh is a Feminine herb, ruled by the Moon and governed by Water. The Deities associated with this herb are Isis, Adonis, Ra and Mirian. The most common use for Myrrh is Protection, Exorcism, Healing, and Spirituality. For those who are comfortable with the Egyptian Pantheon, Burn Myrrh at noon each day to honor the Sun god Ra. Burned as incense myrrh purifies the area, lifts the vibrations and creates peace. However it is rarely burned alone; usually in conjunction with frankincense or other herbs, depending on your path and the rituals intended purpose.

Myrrh increases the power of any incense to which it is added. Myrrh is included in healing incenses and sachets, and its smoke is used to consecrate, purify, and bless objects such as amulets, talismans, charms, and magical tools. Myrrh aids in higher meditation and clearer

contemplation. A combination of Myrrh and Amber make a very powerful protection amulet. When carried with Coral makes an amulet that will protect the wearer from dark spells by others.

A piece of the stone coral can protect the holder from dark witchcraft and the evil eye and to draw away melancholia. It will grow dim when the owner is ill, as it absorbs the effects of illness. Coral comes in white, orange and pink and is good to treat anemia, bladder conditions and joint problems. Coral with the Herb Life Everlasting enhances Longevity, health, and healing. A piece of coral is also known as the gem of Anuk, one of the Nephilim, or sons that came about from union of the sons of god with the daughters of man.

As we have already seen in chapter one, The Nephilim or "Fallen Ones" bore many other tribal names, such as Emim ("Terrors"), Repha'im ("Weakeners"), Gibborim ("Giant Heroes"), Zamzummim ("Achievers"), Anakim ("Long-necked" or "Wearers of Necklaces"), Awwim ("Devastators" or "Serpents"). One of the Nephilim named Arba is said to have built the city

of Hebron on a rock containing the richest deposits of gemstones. He called it "Kiriath-Arba" after him, and become the father of Anak whose three sons, Sheshai, Ahiman and Talmai, were later expelled by Joshua's comrade Caleb. Since, however, arba means "four" in Hebrew, Kiriath-Arba meant "City of Four," a reference to its four quarters or the four elements, mythically connected with the Anakite clans. Anak himself and his "sons" Sheshai, Ahiman and Talmai. Each of these would have dominion over four classes of metals, herbs, and demons. Talmai would have dominion over sweet smelling herbs such as Lilac. This herbal flower symbolizes Love and attractions. Ritual uses of Lilac include Exorcism of wicked spirits and Protection. Lilac drives away evil when it is planted near the entrance of your abode. The fresh flowers can be placed in a haunted house to clear it. This should never be done because the spirits that reside there may be beneficial and thus you would drive away those entities that can help you.

It was with the use of the plant lettuce that

the oracles learned the color vibrations of the planets and color magic. Lettuce is used for Chastity, Protection, Love, Divination, and Sleep.

From the color vibrations and divination practices of old the practitioner has this new knowledge to aid them in their rituals and spells. The planet Saturn has the vibration of the color Black. Jupiter is the supreme ruler over Celestial Blue. Mars is the ruling body over the color Red. Venus the planet of Love and Libra has the vibrations for the color Green and Pink, while Mercury rules mixed colors. The Greatest planet in our system, the Sun rules over the color Gold, Yellow or Citron and its Dark sister the Moon is ruler of Silver or the color of the Argentine Earth. By using these colors as well as other information, the practitioner can combine the vibrations to acquire the best results and guard against negativity.

The Practitioner can use the herbal flower Lily for Protection and Breaking Love spells. They would also use the color associated with Jupiter or Mercury to call on the vibrations of the planets.

When the practitioner uses Leek to call on Love, they would use Green for Venus and Red for the traditional color of Mars. The herbal plant leek is used for Love, Protection, and Exorcism.

“Lemon or Lime”, a bartender may ask. But does he know the significance? Lime has always been associated in Healing, Love and Protection rituals. The peel or rind is the main part used in most rituals. The fruit is often eaten in conjunction with the ritual or a purification rite. So when the garnish on your beverage is a lime, be sure to eat the pulp and ask the guardians of the spirit world to protect and cleanse you.

Linden Flowers are not only beautiful, but they make the most valuable honey found in the entire world. It can also be called the Lime tree flower. This herb is used for Protection, Immortality, Luck, Love, and Sleep. Linden bark is carried in medicine bags for protection. The leaves and flowers are symbols of immortality. Hang branches over the door for protection or grow in the garden to protect your property.

Before a ritual use Lobelia to calm the body

and mind. This herb is a feminine Herb that is ruled by Saturn and governed by water. It usually grows with nice delicate baby blue flowers and is good for border plants. Lobelia has the power to halt storms when used in weather magic. Weather magic is classed with Elemental Magic and one of the twelve powers of the creators. Other names for this herb are Indian tobacco, Pukewood, Asthma Weed, and Bladerpod. Lobelia can be placed under the bed of Quarreling lovers to cause them to find love again. It is not to be ingested because this herb in quantities can be deadly. Caution should always be used when making potions with Lobelia or any other herb.

Looestribe is used for Peace and Protection. Placed in the corners of each room in your house or office and this herb restores harmony and brings peace. Give as a gift to bring about a friendly accord. You should only harvest this Looestribe in the morning hours during the fall of the year. Combined this with Lucky Hand (Salep Root) in charms for Employment, Gambling, Luck, Protection, Money, and Travel.

Lovage is a catch all herb. It is used in Love and the protection from evil spirits. Used in love incenses or sachets. Mix with other love herbs such as Damiana, Black Snake Root or Meadowsweet to attract love.

It is also known as Queen of the Meadow, Gravel Root, and Meadowwort. Meadowsweet is One of the three most sacred Druid herbs. It is an herb of Jupiter and is useful in love spells. Use fresh flowers to decorate the altar during love spells, use the dried petals in love mixtures. Meadowsweet in the house will generate peace and a sense of well being. Fresh flowers should be included in the bridal bouquet. Meadowsweet is the one plant necessary in hand fasting to insure the couple remain together. Use Meadowsweet to make the following favorite ritual drink.

5 gallons of blessed holy water 2 cup
meadowsweet herb 2 cup woodruff sprigs 2
cup heather flowers 5 cloves 2 1/2 cup
honey 1 cup brown sugar 3 cup barley malt 4
oz. brewer's yeast

Boil the water into a large cauldron or kettle.

Add the meadowsweet herb, woodruff sprigs, heather flowers, and cloves. Boil for one hour and add the honey, brown sugar, and barley malt. Stir thirteen times in a clockwise direction and then remove from heat. Strain through a cheesecloth and allow the liquid to cool to room temperature. Now it is time to stir in the brewer's yeast. Cover with a clean towel and let it stand for two day and nights. Strain again, bottle, and then store in a cool place until ready to serve. This makes a wonderful libation for Summer Solstice and other rituals and gatherings. If you gather enough and make in quantity, this can become a wonderful gift to give at special holidays.

Mace is a masculine herb, ruled by Mercury and governed by the Air. Mace is also called Masculine, which can sometimes be confusing in reading rituals and spells. Mace is used with nutmeg and found in many spells for Psychic and Mental Power. Too much of this herb can cause hallucinations.

Now we all have heard of the Mandrake root. Mandrake is used for Protection, Love, Money, Fertility, and Health. It is also called Satan's Apple. Mandrake is governed by Mercury and best used in carvings of poppets. The herb was used as an anesthetic in surgical operations because of its pain killing properties. A special anesthetic potion was invented in Bologna in the thirteenth century using Mandrake. Ingredients of this anesthetic were poppy, mandrake root, vanilla, and vinegar. To make use of the Mandrake root for a Love Mojo do the ritual spell here.

Fill a red or pink flannel or chamois mojo bag with some Venus-ruled herbs (catnip, mugwort, or yarrow), a heart-shaped piece of sun-dried lemon peel, a piece of red or pink coral, a lock of your own hair and any of the following roots of love magic. You can use Adam and Eve root, Beth root, ginseng root, John the Conqueror root, Mandrake root, or Orris root. Seal the bag; consecrate and charge it, and then wear it daily on a white string or gold chain around your neck. If you have a particular lover in mind that you wish

to attract, fix your thoughts on that person as you make the mojo bag. Chant his or her name many times a day or make a little jingle using his / her name. When you are around the person, secretly touch them with the mojo bag and concentrate on what you wish to occur between the two.

To keep the magic potent and to prevent negativity from stopping its powers, you should anoint the bag once a week on a Friday evening with three drops of pink champagne or rose oil, and then pass it through the rising smoke of burning patchouli incense. You can also use the herb Maple but since it is also used in Money rituals it is better to use incense that is pleasing to you and associated with Love and relationships. One of the best ways to receive the strongest results is to know the astrological signs of your intended lover and cast your Moji Bag using things attributed to that particular sign. Personal items are also good if you can acquire them in secret.

Marigolds are used in spells and rituals of Protection, Prophetic Dreams, Legal Matters, and Psychic Powers. It is also known as Calendula,

Holigold, Pot Marigold and Bride of the Sun. The flowers are a healing agent. Marigold is called "summer's bride", the yellow calendula embodies the Sun's fire and life sustaining virtue. Marigold charms are carried into court for a favorable verdict. Marigolds should be harvested in the full sun and come in a variety of colors that will be easy to use in rituals to get the right vibrations. Marigolds are sacred to the Autumn Equinox. You can cast another love spell using these wonderful flowers.

In this spell you use a footprint impression in the dirt that has been left by your lover, for this love spell works on your lover through the earth upon which he or she walks. You must start this spell on Friday evening follow your lover's footsteps without being seen. Dig up the footprint along with the surrounding earth. Put it in a plastic bag and bring it home. Carve your lover's name on the side of a clay flower pot. Plant marigolds, symbolizing everlasting love, and bury a rose quartz crystal in the pot. As the golden blossoms grow and bloom and never fade, so will your

sweetheart's love for you do the same. Enhance this spell by shredding a few of the marigold blossoms into your favorite salad and serve it to them for dinner.

Another good Herb for salads is Marjoram. This herb is also called Sweet Marjoram and Wintersweet. It is a popular culinary herb used in salads, sauces, cheese, and in liqueurs. The best use I have found for this herb is to bring happiness to a depressed person. To make a happiness powder using this herb, Mix lavender, catnip and marjoram. Create a circle by sprinkling the powder and sit within it while visualizing the powers of the herbs filling you with positive feelings. Use this powder with a yellow candle to send healing vibrations to someone who is ill.

The herb Master Wort is used for Strength, Courage, and Protection and Mesquite is not only good for burning when barbecuing steaks but also healing. The herb Mimosa makes a strong amulet for Protection, Love, Prophetic Dreams, and Purification. Use Moonwort for Love and Money, but not the love of Money.

Papaya, while sweet and plentiful is some parts of the country are wonderful fruit to give a person for Love and Protection. They are also called Paw paws. I think we all can remember the old saying, "Picking Up Paw paws and putting them in my pockets." Young girls always carry these and give to their favorite boy at school to promote love between them. Orchids also have always been the favorite flower of Love.

The herb Mastic is commonly called Gum Mastic. This herb is used in rituals and spells involving Love, Magical Power, and Psychic Awareness. Like Mastic, Mugwort is an aid in Psychic power development if used in conjunction with the proper meditations and rituals.

Mugwort is also called Felon Herb, St. John's Plant, Sailor's Tobacco, Witch Herb, and Old Man. Strength, Psychic Powers, Protection, Prophetic Dreams, Healing, And Astral Projection. Mugwort and others are burnt during scrying rituals. It is always used to cleanse crystal balls and tools of divination. A popular sprinkling powder made from Mugwort is Astral travel

Powder.

The Practitioner can make this magic powder by mixing Sandalwood, Mugwort, and Cinnamon. It should be stored in a stone box or a golden colored glass container. It will assist your attempts at astral projection when Sprinkled on the bed sheets before sleeping. It can also bring prophetic dreams. Practitioners of old used this powder to foretell their future partners in dreams.

Out of the many varieties of Moss the practitioner will find many uses. Moss is used in rituals for Luck and Money. Moss can be used in covering wounds and scratches. There are many uses and varieties of moss. Oak Moss is a whitish blue to green, shrubby lichen. The Arabs use ground Oak Moss to leaven bread for their religious ceremonies. Native Americans used it when binding wounds, it is a stomach tonic and an expectorant, and soothes coughs. Oak Moss yields a purple wool dye, but air pollution has made it scarce. Oak Moss is primarily used in Money Spells. A combination of Moss and Nettle can be sprinkled for protection.

Nettle is also used in Exorcism, Protection, Healing, and Lust. Stuff nettle in a small cloth doll with the return to sender powder or herbs to return curses to the sender. Afterwards, dispose of doll by burning it or burying it. Nettle is generally burnt during exorcism's, birth, and death rituals.

You will find ritual uses for the common or wild onion. It is used for rituals of Protection, Exorcism, Healing, Money, and to obtain Prophetic Dreams, and Lust. The Olive in your martini can be used for Healing, Peace, Fertility, Potency, Protection, and Lust ceremonies without the alcohol. While the greatest used herb can be seen in the Orris Root.

The Orris root has long been used to find and hold love. The whole Orrisroot is carried; the powder is added to sachets, sprinkled on sheets, clothing and the body as well as around the house. Orrisroot powder is known as "Love Drawing Powder". It is used in most powder compounds to make other sprinkling powders.

When Sweet Flag Oil is added to Orris Root it becomes Isis Powder that is used for stronger

will and concentration. You can add Galangel, Rosemary, and High John Conqueror to make Jalop Powder, one of the highest forms of protective powders. Do bear in mind that when making Jalop powder that it should be stored in a bottle or container of a Dark Blue color, wrapped in a white silk cloth. Added to Mustard or Mustard seeds it makes a wonderful protective amulet.

When you need to use a darker magic, Orris root is used to make Lost and Away Powder. To make this sprinkling powder, mix Dirt from the crossroad, Mistletoe, Sulphur, Orris root and Sage. Store in a Black or violet colored glass container until you need it. Then to sue simply sprinkle in the path where the person you want to rid yourself of will walk or on your front porch. It is important to always make enough for several uses and store it in a dark place.

Wishbone Powder is made by mixing Orris Root, Sandalwood, Allspice, Deerstongue and Musk. Use this powder by sprinkling it on yourself before bed and your dreams and wishes will come true. This powder is also useful for controlling

dreams.

Nutmeg and Rue is combination can promote tranquility. Nutmeg is also known as Qoust, Sadhika, Wohpala, and Bicuiba Acu. It is a Masculine herb ruled by the planet Jupiter and governed by Fire. It's used primarily in spells involving Luck, Money, Health, and Fidelity. Mace is also a common nutmeg, belonging to the same plant family and having some of the same characteristics. This spice and herb is common in many households, being one of the favorite spices in cooking.

Rue is also known as Herb of Grace. The Celts considered rue an anti-magical herb, which is a defense against spells and dark magic. Burned rue in exorcism rites. Use in altar oil, blessing, purifying, cleansing, consecration, protection, banishing, releasing, exorcism, inspiration, and wisdom. Fresh Rue leaves placed on the forehead relieve headaches. Use Rue to break hexes and curses that may have been cast against you. Rue is another plant said to grow best when stolen and indeed its presence in the garden beautifies and

protects it. Toads will not come near a garden with rue planted in it.

Myrtle is used in rituals of Love, Fertility, Youth, Peace, and Money. It is recommended to grow myrtle as a window box plant to bring luck to your house.

Make your love drawing powder using Myrtle. You will need the following herbs.

- 1 oz powdered sandalwood,
- 1/4 tsp cinnamon,
- 1 tsp sweet basil,
- 1 tsp myrtle,
- 1/2 dram frankincense oil,
- 1 dram red rose oil,
- 4 oz cornstarch or rice flour.

Mix these ingredients on the day of Venus, just before the sun rises. Store them in a cool dry place and each night sprinkle this powder on yourself and meditate on the love you wish to attract. To aid someone else, simply sprinkle the herb on them and tell them to concentrate on the love they wish to attract. It may help to ask them to bring a description of the person's traits and

qualities to you at the time you perform the rite for them. It may be best if you can do this ritual under the mighty oak.

Oak is one of the most sacred trees in magic. It is also called Tanners Bark and The King of Trees. Oak Tree parts are used for Protection, Health, Money, Healing, Potency, and Fertility. To collect and harvest any part should be done with reverence and before Midsummer Solstice. This is the tree of the sun, and sacred to Brigit, Zeus, Jupiter, Hercules, The Dagda, Thor and all other Thunder Gods. The Mighty Oak Tree represents the horned One in most circles and symbolized abundance, fertility, longevity, protection, and the ability to withstand the lightening blasts of spiritual awareness while remaining firmly rooted in the mother earth. All parts of the tree are powerful protective charms. A practitioner's personal wands or staff is made of Oak. Acorns from the Oak Tree bring fertility and abundance to any endeavor. Carry one for luck and to draw money into your pockets. Acorns gathered at night hold the most power in fertility. Burning oak

leaves purifies the atmosphere and can bring about rain to cleanse the earth. Oak is the truth tree and works well with the grain oat. A combination of Oats and Oak chips are said to be a powerful Money Draw spell for those who really need fast cash.

Orange is another herb for fast cash as well as Love, Divination, and Luck. Use Orange Peels in incense for love, good fortune, divination, balance, healing, harmony, peace, money and riches, Psychic awareness, and Luck. This herb is ruled by the Sun. Incense of Orange is good for tarot reading sessions. A combination of Lime, Orange, Peach Blossoms, and Melon Oil is intended to stop infidelity from starting or continuing in a marriage.

A wise practitioner can use Pansies for Love, Rain Magic, and Divination and a common garden Pea to attract Money. Make a fruity salad and include a Peach and find true Love is in your reach. It is also true, use a Pear if you must and your reward is Love and Lust.

Chapter Seven

Wise Ones Spells for Healing and Protection

As we continue in our journey into the arts of herbs, stones and magical workings, we shall concentrate on more things that can help us gain in your life. We have seen how the vibrations of herbs will work in combination with colors, spirits and planets. Colors are usually associated with days of the week, astrology, and the goddesses and gods. For centuries people have looked at color as a guide to life. Even modern psychology looks at color to treat illness. This chapter will look at the vibrations of herbal colors and the way we can use them for protection and accomplishing our wishes. We will not enter the realm of astrology because there are numerous books on the topic to further

your education in the craft.

Parsley is called Devils Oatmeal. It is a masculine herb ruled by the planet Mercury and governed by Air. It vibrates to the color Gray. It is associated with the goddess Persephone. Maybe this association is key in the saying that it must ask the devil permission to grow. The Greeks used parsley in funeral rites. When eaten, parsley evokes lust and promotes fertility, but if you are in love do not cut parsley you'll cut your love as well.

Though the plant has associations with death and is often regarded as evil, the Romans tucked a sprig into their togas every morning for protection. It is also placed on plates of food to guard it from contamination or the entry into your food by passing malevolent spirits. This ritual is carried over to modern day because parsley is the most common garnish found in all cultures. Use parsley in purification baths, and those to stop all misfortune. Do not ingest parsley if you have weak kidneys.

The Passion Flower when used in its proper

ritual will promote Peace, Sleep, and Friendship. Carry on your person to attract friends and gain popularity. Placed under your pillow, it can assist in sleep and dream therapy while protecting you from the evil spirits of the dream world. The Passion flower vibrates to the color Purple or deep violet and is said to be the royal purple of Kings.

The Peony is another good herb used for Protection and Exorcism. The Peony vibrates to the color White and should not be mixed with the color black. Not only is it a wonderful flower for your garden, but Carry or wear Peony Root to guard from harm or negativity. Hang the flowers or roots above your door or use in incense mixtures designed for exorcism.

Patchouli was a favorite incense of the sixties and seventies. Its use is said to cause sometimes loss of appetite and sleep and nervous attacks. Patchouli is not recommended for nervous people. The Chinese, Japanese and Arabs believe it to possess prophylactic properties. Patchouli smells like very fertile earth, and so has been used

in money and prosperity mixtures and spells. It is sprinkled on money, added to purses and wallets, and placed around the base of green candles. Because of its earthly smell and vibrations, Patchouli is used as a fertility talisman. It is used to attract people and to promote lust. Burn as incense for: Drawing Money, Fertility, Protection, Defense, Lust, Banishing, Releasing, Love, Earth, and Underworld. I have discovered that Patchouli is also preferred at gatherings. It promotes an easy feeling among friends and lovers. Patchouli vibrates to the colors brown or green.

To make the famous Jyoti Powder used in Voodoo, mix equal parts of patchouli, Nasturtium Seeds, and Galangel in a copper pot. Add to this mixture Citronella Oil and a small amount of water to make a paste consistency. Heat until almost boil then let it dry. Crush it back into a fine powder state and use for financial gain, purification, and overcoming hexes. Sprinkle powder around your home or business for protection and gains in financial matters.

Periwinkle vibrates to his namesake color,

periwinkle and is used in spells for Love, Lust, Mental Powers, Money, and Protection. A mixture of Periwinkle and Persimmon can bring vibrations that are used for Changing Sex, Healing, and Luck. Persimmon vibrates to the deep orange colors and is generally not used until winter solstices. Periwinkle and Violet flowers are used to protect the graves of infants.

The Violet is also called Heartsease, Little Faces, and Viola. They represent being shy, thus the saying evolved “a shrinking violet”. They also represent faith. Violet crowns can cure headache, bring sleep, and calm anger. Violets when mixed with lavender, apple blossoms, yarrow, and roses act as a strong love potions. The leaf is a powerful protection from all evil. Mixed with Lavender to make a powerful live stimulant and arouse lust. It is said to give the spirit a restful existence in the afterlife. Violets are also used by mediums to calm the spirits of the dead when summonsed. The Violet will vibrate to the color by its same name. Perhaps because of its calming effects, Confusion Powder is made with Violet.

To make your confusion powder, mix Violet, lavender, coconut, Black pepper and Ginseng. Add all the ingredients to rice flour or corn starch. Confusion powder should be stored in a red or amber colored bottle.

Pine is a Sacred Tree to the Druids. It is known as one of the Seven Chieftain Trees of the Irish. Since Pine is “The tree of Peace”, Burn pine to purify the home and decorate with its branches to bring healing and joy. The cones and nuts are carried as fertility charms. The oil is commonly added to purification, protection, money and healing mixtures. Burn Pineas incense for, money, purification, healing and exorcism. Pine is one of the plants associated with the Holy high festival of Midsummer.

Other Plants and herbs associated with Midsummer are oak, mistletoe, frankincense, lemon, sandalwood, heliotrope, copal, saffron, galangal, laurel and ylang-ylang, chamomile, cinquefoil, elder, fennel, hemp, larkspur, lavender, male fern, mugwort, roses, Saint John's wort, wild thyme, wisteria and verbena. Traditionally, herbs

gathered on this day are extremely powerful.

The succulent Pineapple is not only a wonderful fruit to eat, but this tubular fruit is also used for rituals involving Luck, Money, and Chastity. It is one of the strongest and most distinctive smells that we recognize easily. It is good to have this scent around when you are evolving your precognitive abilities. Pineapple on the hands will help you block the vibrations and impressions of those around you.

Pipsissewa is also called Pyrola umbellate, Prince's Pine, King's Cure, Ground Holly, and Love in Winter, Yevering Bell, and Rheumatism Weed. Since the 16th century, witches have used it in connection with Money and the calling of Spirits. The higher form of this herb, Wintergreen is used for protection, healing and hex breaking. Some call this variety Teaberry, Box berry, Mountain Tea, Checkerberry, Partridge Berry or Deer berry.

Plantain, also called Adders Tongue, Serpent's Tongue, Dog's Tooth, Violet Snowdrop or the Yellow Snowdrop is used to wrap wounds and

promote healing. The leaves applied directly to the affected area in this manner reduce swelling. Adders tongue is used in several spells and rituals to promote healing. The main uses for this herb are Healing, Protection, Strength, and Snake Repelling. Plantain can be also added to your wild green mixtures and eaten as homage to the mother earth. Another one of these harvested wild greens is Poke.

Poke promotes Courage and is used in Hex Breaking ceremonies. Carry this herb to instill courage when you must face areas of danger. Make an infusion of Poke Root and sprinkle around the home during the new moon to break any curse or spell. The berries produce a red juice suitable for using as ink for your Book of Shadows and your spells. You can add other herbs to the ink to produce the desired results and color.

The Popular tree and wood is Used in rituals of Money and Flying. This is tree of the Autumn Equinox and of old age. The main parts used are the shifting leaved White Poplar, or Aspen, This is the shield maker's tree. Hercules bound his head in

triumph with poplar after killing the Cacus, son of Vulcan and the evil one. The Black poplar was a funeral tree sacred to the Mother Earth. In ancient Ireland, the coffin makers measuring rod was made of Aspen, apparently to remind the dead that this was not the end. Poplars vibrate to Black and White and are the first warning of rain when their leaves turn upside down to catch the first drops of rain.

Of all the useful herbs and items we have in everyday life, nothing is more versatile than the common potato. Many people do not know that a common potato is a herb. It is closely related to its more deadly cousin, Nightshade. The stalks, leaves and green berries possess the narcotic and poisonous properties of the Nightshades, but the tuber roots we eat. It comes in many varieties such as Prairie Potato which is also called Prairie Turnip, Tipsinah. Taahgu, and a Wild Potato. It has also gone by the names Mechameck and Wild Jalap. We call it Man-in-the-earth and Man-in-the-ground because of its uses in carving figures and its general elongated shape. The magical uses have

been mainly for Image Magic and Healing. Drinking very hot potato water has been said to help cure rheumatism. Use the potato to carve images in any ritual where a figure is needed. The Potato will vibrate to any color and goes well with earth tone colors.

Quince is an herb of Protection, Love, and Happiness. The flower is used to ward off the evil eye. The Fruit is probably the famous Golden Apple spoke of by Virgil. This herbal plant is used to summons bears as your animal spirit totem. It vibrates to the color green and yellow. Practitioners should make a Quince preserves to serve at all Sabbaths.

Rosemary is also called Compass Weed, Dew of the Sea, Elf leaf, Polar Plant and sea Dew. It is a masculine herb that is ruled by the Sun and governed by Fire. Rosemary, sometimes in conjunction with Juniper berries, is burned for protection against disease. Place in books and drawers to repel moths. We burn and sprinkle Rosemary for cleansing and purifying your house. It gets rid of negativity and evil presences. It is one

of the oldest incenses used by the Practitioners. Burn for protection, exorcism, purification, healing, to cause sleep, Rosemary is an all-purpose herbal that can be substituted for almost any other herb in your ritual or spell. The color vibrations of Rosemary are like the spectrum of the rainbow.

The Rowan Tree is called Mountain Ash, Witch wood, Witch bane, and Sorb Apple. The Rowan tree is sacred to the goddess Bride/Bridgit. Great care and reverence should be taken when cutting or harvesting its leaves. Rowan is a traditional country charm against witchcraft and evil magic. Its origin is thought to be from the magical fairies and elves. It makes an excellent wand for your magical practices if you are lucky enough to live around one. Rowan Wands are for knowledge, locating metal and general divination rods. Rowans growing near stone circles are the most potent because they vibrate with the power of the stone as well as their own. Gray is the vibration of the Rowan Tree.

Use this potent spell using Rowan and Ash

leaves for healing. You will need, leaves from an ash and a rowan tree, Your magical Athame, a place to work undisturbed for a few hours. Scratch a circle in the ground with your Athame large enough so you can work inside without accidentally stepping outside the circle.

Place the sword or knife on the ground in the center of the circle so that the blade is pointing east. Stand in the center of the circle with the Ash and Rowan leaves in your hand. Face to the East and hold the leaves high and say,

“Elementals of the Air bring me Knowledge and the creativity to use it!”

Then throw a few leaves to the East.

Face to the South, again holding the leaves high, and say, "Elementals of Fire bring me the energy to change myself for the better!" Then throw a few leaves to the South.

Now turn to the West, hold the leaves high and say, "Elementals of Water shower me with true love and healing!" Throw some leaves to the West.

Turn to the North, leaves held high, and say, "Elementals of Earth bring to me all forms of prosperous success!" Again, throw some leaves to the North.

Now turn to the East again and throw the remaining leaves straight up into the air as high as you can and say, All those who help me shall be richly Blessed! For Them and Me, comes only the best.

Now wipe out the circle and you're finished!

You can place Rowan leaves under your pillow at night to promote dream magic. You can add Snake Root or Rhubarb to the above spell for added Protection.

When doing healing spells remember, Saint John's Wort is the ultimate healers' herb. This is a sacred herb of the Druids. It is passed through smoke during the Summer Solstice to charge it with power if invincibility. It has been called the "leaf of the blessed." It is the ideal combination of water and fire, the ultimate healing essence. It is Burned at Litha to send away negativity; wear for invincibility, health and willpower.

Gather this herb at Litha or on a Friday and wear it to keep your mind sharp. When placed in a jar and hung by a window, St. John's Wort protects against thunderbolts, fire and evil spirits. Both flowers and leaves are used for this purpose. St. John's Wort was held to the mouth of accused Witches to attempt to force them to confess in the burning times. Little did the Christian Torturer know that this helped ease the suffering of those accused of evil deeds.

Sunflower used to decorate at Litha are for Fertility, Wishes, Health, and Wisdom. The seeds are eaten raw, roasted, and ground into meal. Native American warriors used the meal to make "energy cakes."

In Aztec temples of the sun, priestesses carried sunflowers and wore them as crowns. As sun symbols, these flowers symbolize the wisdom and the fertility of the Sun. Sunflower seeds are eaten by women who wish to conceive.

Skullcap is a powerful Love herb. It is also called Helmet Flower, Madweed, or Hoodwort. It is used for Love, Fidelity, and Peace. Skullcap is

used by woman to protect their mates from love spells that are cast by others. Use this herb as a focusing herb for magic onto its target. When sprinkled under the bed it helps keep couples together and fidelity in the union. It is used in spells relating to keeping commitments.

Rye is used for Love, Fidelity. Some ancient spells and rites call for the mold of rye bread, so you should always keep this herbal on hand. Use this mold carefully. It is the precursor of the drug LSD and can be a very toxic poison. It can also be noted that the mold of Rye Bread can cause visions of the unseen world and if taken in too much quantity, can cause death.

If you need a powerful spell for healing and general cleansing of the psychic centers, use Saffron. Saffron is used in spells for Happiness, Health/Healing, Lust, Psychic Awareness, Wind Raising, and Strength. Saffron was an ingredient in famous Mithridates' antidote. The herb is believed to be effective against all kinds of poisons. So if too much rye is used to obtain your visions, or as a preventive, use saffron after each usage. A Saffron

and Senna combination is a powerful love spell and they both vibrate to the color pink. Use this spell for obtaining Love. You will need Saffron, Senna, a red candle, and a parchment paper made into the shape of a triangle.

In the early morning hours, usually at 3:00A.M., Concentrate on the person you wish to attract. Write the name on the triangular parchment. Place the herbs inside and then burn it to the candle as you do say:

Candle of Love

Herbs of fire

Take this wish

To the one I desire.

So Mote it be

Drink some sarsaparilla tea and relax. Your Love will show soon. You can repeat this ritual up to three times but it is important to make sure it is the right time and the exact time each morn.

Sarsaparilla and Sassafras are both used for Love and Money. It is used in spells of lust and in protection spells. It makes your incense stronger.

Use Sassafras to make the sprinkling powder

Envy and Jealousy Powder. This powder is intended to eliminate feelings of jealousy in people you want to get along with. Sprinkle it on their doorstep or in their path. If you can get close enough then you can also place it on their person. To make this sprinkling powder you will need equal parts of bayberry, Vetivert, Sassafras and Arrowroot. When the moon is waxing, take your ingredients and place them in a protective cloth of yellow and red. Crush them and mix well. Charge them with a chant to the goddess and store them in a Green container.

Remember the Practitioner does not use containers made of Plastic. We only use natural substances. Glass, wood, metal, and stone are best for all storage of magical herbs and items. When calling the goddess and the spirits to charge your items, Sweetgrass can be used as a summoning herb.

Sweetgrass's basic use is Calling Spirits. Native American people dry and braid Sweetgrass which grows abundantly in the American prairie. To burn as incense, light one end and gently blow

out the flame, allowing the grass to continue to smolder, slowly releasing the fragrance. It can also be crushed into a powder and added to other incense mixtures for your sprinkling powders. It cleanses the atmosphere, attracts positive energies and allows relaxation and healing.

Use the herb known as Solomon's seal for Protection and in rites of Exorcism. Add it to incenses, infusions and sachets for protection. It is most powerful in exorcism incenses and cleansing mixtures. Use Solomon's seal as incense to gain knowledge and use in spells to attract material success. Place at each corner of the house for protection. Solomon's seal is used for invocation of the Angels Halliza and Haludiel.

Halliza is the name of the angel appearing on the eternal circle of the pentagram of Solomon. This angel is a powerful being that will bestow knowledge of the winds. Haludiel is an angel of the forth heaven invoked on the Lord's Day, with the invoke facing the south. Haludiel is an angel of intelligence and of the sun. It is Haludiel that guards the rays that warm the earth. During the

creation, Haludiel was one of the angels that were trapped in a willow tree because he hid there to escape the wrath of Gabriel when the Creator was enraged because of the angel's copulation with the daughters of man.

The Willow, also known as White Willow, European Willow, Tree of Enchantment, The Weeping Willow, and Witches Aspirin. It is used for Love, Divination, Protection, and Healing. It is one of the seven sacred trees of Irish magical practice lore. The willow is ruled By the Moon and sacred to the Moon Goddess. Willows are commonly found near ancient British burial sites because they are guardian trees. They protect from negative influences. All parts of the willow guard against evil and can be carried or placed in the home for this purpose. Burn the bark with sandalwood for divination and love.

Magical brooms, especially Witch's brooms, are traditionally bound with a willow branch. The Willow was sacred to Hecate, Circe, Hera, and Persephone, all death aspects of the Triple Moon Goddess, and is used as a staple herbal plant by

the Witches in Greece and Middle Europe.

The herb Star Anise is also one that is taken to graveyards and places of the dead. Star Anise is used for heightened Psychic Powers and Luck. The powdered bark is used as incense in Japanese temples. The Japanese plant the trees around temples and on graves to consecrate and protect them. The seeds are burned as incense to increase psychic powers. Seeds make excellent beads to paint and wear as protection. Mixed with Sunflower seeds it can be used as protection during pregnancy. Placing Star Anise with Sugar Cane will aid the practitioner in spells for a protective love and guard against letting the Lust demons control your life.

Skunk Cabbage is used with the color orange. It is called Skunkweed, Polecat weed, and Meadow Cabbage. It is used in spells of Legal Matters. Carry this herb with the results you wish to obtain in legal matters to an attorney or barrister to overcome and claim the desired result. Add a little tansy for Health and Longevity and stop the legal system from eating away at your soul like

tape worms.

Another herb that is good to cease affairs of others is the Slippery Elm. Slippery Elm is a feminine plant ruled by Saturn and governed by the Air. A Practitioner can use this plant to stop gossip and slander. Make a charm to be worn about the neck of a child to help with learning speech and to be a persuasive speaker later in life. Combine it with Sloe for rites of Exorcism and Protection against those that are possessed by demons or malevolent spirits.

Traditionally Spikenard was burnt as an incense to sedate the nervous system and to decrease insomnia. We Use it in incenses to keep a lover faithful or to attract men or women. It can help clear the mind and encourages focus in love spells like the herb Sumbul and Strawberries. You can add the herb Stillengia to increase the effects of your spell and enhance your psychic powers.

A very masculine herb called Thistle is ruled by Mars and governed by Fire. Some call it Blessed Thistle or Holy Thistle because it is associated with the higher angels and spirits. It is

used in spells and rituals dealing with Strength, Protection, Hex Breaking, and Healing.

Using the Milk Thistle is thought to anger snakes and drive them away or bring them to you based on the ritual performed. Squill and Thistle are used for Hex Breaking when the spell comes to you from those that are unjust.

Thyme is a Feminine herb, ruled by Venus and governed by Water. This herb is used in spells regarding health, Healing, Sleep, Psychic Powers, Love, Purification, and Courage. Thyme is burned in incense to purify your ritual area. It is worn or added to the ritual cup to aid in communing with the deceased as well as attracting people to you.

A place where wild thyme grows will be a particularly powerful energy center on the earth. It is also said that carrying thyme will help see into the "other world". Thyme is also called Common Thyme, Mother of Thyme, and Garden Thyme. This herb is sacred to the Druids and considered one of the most powerful herbs used in the Craft. Thyme is burned in incense form to purify an area. Pouring a tea made with thyme and marjoram into the

bathwater can make a magical cleansing bath. A pillow stuffed with thyme cures nightmares. When attending a funeral, wear a sprig of thyme to repel the negativity of any mourners attending and protect yourself from wandering spirits.

Thyme is one of the main ingredients to many sprinkling powders. You can make Goddess of Love Powder by mixing equal parts of Rose Oil, Mint Oil, Musk Oil, Eucalyptus, Myrrh, Thyme and allspice. Rub on your hands prior to meeting with a person you are "interested" in to encourage them to reciprocate your interest.

Mount Powder is made by combining Basil, Rum, bay, Thyme, and Aloe. As in "surmount difficulties", this practitioners sprinkling powder is intended to give you added physical strength, vitality and enthusiasm. Rub it on your arms and legs or sprinkle it on your altar during ritual. Thyme is essential to all practitioners and is used so much that a good supply is suggested. For those practitioners who really like to live the ritual life daily, use this special recipe to make special bread. It's called Ritual Herb Bread. You will

need these ingredients,

3 Cups of flour

1 tbsp. sugar

1 tsp. salt

1 pkg. yeast

2 tbsp. chopped fresh chives

2 tsp. chopped fresh rosemary

1 tsp. fresh thyme

1 1/4 C. hot water

2 tbsp. Oil

Mix 2 cups of the flour, sugar, salt and yeast in a large bowl. Add herbs, water, and Crisco. Beat slowly, stirring in remaining cup of flour until smooth. While stirring meditate and ask the goddess to bless this bread which in the gift of life.

Scrape batter from sides of bowl and let rise in a warm place for 35 minutes or until it doubles in bulk. Punch down and beat with a spoon for about 15 seconds. Place dough in a greased loaf pan, patting down and forming a loaf in a shape pleasing to you with your hands. Cover and let rise again for about 30 minutes or until it again doubles in bulk. Bake at 375 for 40-45 minutes. Brush top

with butter or margarine and remove from pan to cool. Add a little Vanilla to this bread for Love and those special occasions when you have someone special over.

Vanilla promotes Love, Lust, and Mental Powers and is an excellent flavor that is pleasing to deserts as well as incense. It can also be used to cure toothaches.

Valerian is a very useful herbal root. This herb is also called Garden Heliotrope, Vandal Root, and St. George's Herb. Cats love this herb more than catnip and it should be used to call your familiar. Valerian Root is added to Love Sachets. Put in pillows to promote deep rest and used in spells for Protection, Purification, Harmony, Peace, Happiness, Love, Creative Work, Money and Riches.

Tobacco is a masculine Herb ruled by Mars and governed by Fire. Its spiritual color is red and brown. To the American Indians tobacco was the most sacred of all the plants. It is used in rituals of Healing and, Purification although it is commonly smoked by millions; it is a highly poisonous plant.

It is used to produce visions and to communicate with the spirits. Burning tobacco as incense purifies the area of all negativity and spirits, both good and bad. Therefore this should be avoided unless you need a spiritually sterile environment. Blow the smoke into the ear to cure earaches. Tobacco is a magical substitute for Sulphur, as well as datura and nightshade, both of which are related to tobacco. Use tobacco ash to make a Repealing Powder.

To make this powder Add equal parts of Tobacco Ash, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, and News Print Ash. Use this powder to make married members of the opposite sex leave you alone and prevent people from attacking you. Add animal bones to this and blow it in the direction of the person who is bothering you to send the animals whose bone was mixed to violently attack them.

To make a powder that is not so strong and is intended to eliminate anger and hatred in anyone you may have inadvertently made angry, mix equal parts of Ashes, Red pepper, rose, jasmine and sandalwood. This powder you can call Appease

Anger Powder. Sprinkle near the person you wish to affect or in a path that they must cross. It is the most effective if you can sprinkle it directly on the person, but because of their agitated state and you can't, and then it is easy to sprinkle it where it can get on them.

The herb Vervain has a blue to violet vibration. The herb is a feminine herb and ruled under the planet Venus. It is a Earth elemental and used in spells of Love, Protection, Purification, Peace, Money, Youth, Chastity, Sleep, and Healing. The deities associated with this herb are Kerridwin, Mars, Venus, Aradia, Isis, Juniper, Thor, and Juno. It has been called Brittanica, Enchanter's Plant, Herb of Enchantment, Herb of Grace, Herb of the Cross, Holy Herb, Juno's Tears, Pigeon's Grass, Pigeonwood, and Simpler's Joy. Roman priests and priestesses used it as an alter plant. To the druids, it was like holy water. The liquid from this plant was used to sprinkle on followers as blessings. Wearing or bathing in Vervain places you under the influence of Diana and brings her favor

Vervain is most potent when picked at the harvested under the Dog Star, at the dark of the moon, just before flowering. The spiritual vibration of this plant is strong like Frankincense and Myrrh. Vervain is given to an initiate once they pass the second trial as a gift of love. This is one of those herbal flowers that are required for any serious practitioner and not too easy to grow. It is a very rare gift of the earth with a special vibration. It is mother earths test to see if a practitioner can care for her plants that makes the Vervain plant the passing test.

As you have seen, the herb Vetiver is popular with all types of powders that a practitioner can sprinkle. It is also called Khus-khus. Vetiver root is burned to overcome evil spells. It is used in money spells and mixtures, placed in the cash register to increase business, carried to attract luck, and burned in anti-theft incenses. It vibrates and is good with all colors. Added to walnut it is good for Health, Mental Powers, Infertility, and acquiring your wishes.

Mixing the Wax Plant and wheat will

produce protection, fertility and wealth. By adding Wolf's Bane to the mix it will induce a greater protection to the point of invisibility. Woodruff added will assure you Victory, Protection, and Money.

Witch Hazel is the herb I use the most. It is also called Spotted Alder, and Winter Bloom. It is used in rites for Protection and Chastity. Witch hazel is more commonly known from our medicine cabinets. Witch hazel has long been used to fashion divining rods, hence the common name. The bark and twigs are also used to protect against evil influences. If carried, witch hazel helps to mend a broken heart and cool the passions. The practitioner should be aware that the witch hazel should only be cut with permission of the goddess of the earth and in the dark of the moon. Witch Hazel and Yew are very important to the dark of the moon.

The Great Yew Tree is one of the most powerful of the trees. The Yew is known as the death tree in all European countries. It is Sacred to Hecate in Greece and Italy. Yew wood makes

excellent bows, as the Romans learned from the Greeks. This strengthened the belief that Yew was connected with death. Its use in England is recalled in Macbeth where Hecate's cauldron contained: "... Slips of Yew, slivered in the moon eclipse. The Silver Fir of birth and the Yew of death are sisters. They stand next to each other in the circle of the year and their foliage is almost identical.

Wormwood is a Masculine herb ruled by Mars and governed by Fire. It is associated with the deities Diana and Artemis. It has been called Old Woman, Crown for a King, Madderwort, and Wormot. It is used in rituals dealing with Psychic Powers, Protection, Love, Calling Spirits. You can burn wormwood as an incense to increase psychic powers and burned in a graveyard to summon the spirits of the departed. Sometimes it is mixed with sandalwood for this purpose. The scent of wormwood is said to increase psychic powers because it vibrates with the angels and spirits alike.

Yerba Santa and Yerba Mate is used much like Wormwood. It is a favorite in rituals of

Beauty, Healing, Psychic Powers, and Protection. This is generally used to attract the opposite sex. Sprinkle Yerba on candles in love spells to bind them.

Using Ylang-Ylang or Yohimbe also brings Love. This herb is used in spells for Peace, Love and Sex Spells. It can be worn on the body or included in mixtures for these purposes. Yohimbe has been scientifically tested and proved to cure male impotency. For those that practice the calling of the fairy people, Ylang-Ylang is essential in making fairy oil.

You can make Fairy oil by combining the following; $\frac{1}{4}$ oz Almond Oil, 7 drops of lemon grass oil, 5 drops of lavender oil, 7 drops of lemon oil, 11 drops of gardenia oil, 7 drops of rose oil, 7 drops of jasmine, 16 drops of ylang-ylang oil, and 20 drops of violet oil. When calling the fairy's make sure you also have a Peridot or Moonstone crystal. This will help attract them to you.

Now that we have reviewed many herbs and

spells you can use, be creative and combine and experiment for your own personal results. Be sure to always write down in your book of shadows the spells and combinations used and the results they produced. Sometimes these results will work for one that will not aid another; therefore the Practitioner is forever learning better ways to commune with the creator.

Chapter Eight

Crystals and Gems for Spells and Rites

They were here when the world began, as old as time and the stuff of legends, crystals are natural mineral compounds that have their own vibrations and are always combined with herbs in rituals and spells. The great Earth spirits dwell in the crystals and gemstones that create a powerful tool in working magic. Crystals are used in many ways in magic, but mainly they are used to amplify the power released in a ritual by adding their powers to the power produced spells and rites of the practitioner.

Crystals are often carried as amulets for a particular purpose, or placed in the home where their vibrations will be a continuous presence and

force for change. Because the stones vibrate with each individual and the spirits within are aware of the mystical needs of all, not every stone will work with every person. To gain the fullest benefit of gemstones and crystals for healing and spell craft, some training and knowledge is recommended. However, you can experiment with the healing effects of gemstones by testing them out for yourselves. The power of stones in one of the powers granted by the creator and those possessing it are extremely gifted Earth witches. Because they are ground to the earth, their power can only grow as their natural forces emerge with the earth.

When purchasing stones instead of gathering them from the earth, try holding different rocks and gems in your hands and notice whether you feel tingling, or just a sense of peace and calm. According to your own individual needs, the stones will vibrate differently with your energy field and you will feel intuitively drawn to certain ones. To those that you are drawn to, purchase at all cost, for they belong to you and are calling out to you. If you are in the shop of a true practitioner,

there is the likelihood that they will accept whatever is offered if they too know the stone is calling to you.

All crystals should be purified before use. There are many ways to do this, they can be smudged with sage or a cleansing herb or they may be placed in running water such as a stream for two days. This is always dependent on which stone you are cleansing. You should first bury them in a bowl of salt overnight before beginning your cleansing ritual. Some crystals are charged by sunlight while others are charged by the moon. Stones of peace are never to be in areas of extreme stress, this will cause them to creak and break.

The crystals should also be ritually charged for the purpose(s) you intend use them. Basically this entails a very minimal ritual in which you call upon the spirit of the stone to benefit you in the ways you intend to use it. After it is cleansed and ritually charged the stone is ready to use. It may be carried, worn, placed in the home, put on the altar, or used in an amulet bag depending upon which works best for the purpose desired. We will again

begin our work with brief listings of stones, with spells and rituals they are associated with. We have already seen them used in many rituals included in this book and when used we have attempted to give a brief usage of the stone. Most crystals will need recharged after use and age. You can do this by placing them in sunlight or Moonlight. Some must be buried into the earth or placed in running water. Be careful to not attempt to energize stones before you know their character. Some stones such as amethyst rose quartz, ametrine, kunzite, celestite, aquamarine, smoky quartz, and fluorite, and very sensitive and this will weaken them.

The Agate is the stone of good fortune, health and long life. This stone attracts the love of others, increase courage, intelligence, strength and modesty. In health it is used for the heart and all heart illnesses. The blue lace variety is used for its calming effect. It comes in many colors and usually has a banded or striped appearance. Over the centuries, Agate has been called by many names based on its color. It is one of the most versatile

stones with a very low vibration, and thus for great benefits, the user must have it in their possession for a long time.

Fire Agate is used to provide a deep connection to earth and the earth spirits. It Calms and settles energy, especially before meditation. Fire Agate Reflects harm back to source and has Strong sexual connection. Its vibrations can alleviate stomach and endocrine problems, treats circulatory disorders, central nervous system, and eye problems, and enhances night vision.

Green Agate helps in solving arguments and making decisions. Tree Agate encourages inner peace and certainty. It allows us to be aware of one's own strength. It aids one deal with difficulties as challenges arise as well as awakens the warrior in you. It ensures vitality, a good stable health and a well-functioning immune system. Used in conjunction with Alum, it can provide protection from disease and guard from the evil eye.

Moss Agate has special Attunement with nature and growing things. Moss Agate can lead

you to agreeability, persuasiveness, and strength in your endeavors. It can provide emotional balance and strength or positive traits. Known to Native American as the "Power Stone." It is always used in weather magic for pattern changes. Agate's can be charged by direct contact with the earth and in water.

Alexandrite is known as the "stone of good omen." It was named for Russian Czar Alexander II in 1830 and is used to bring inner peace and magnanimity of heart and to benefit head, spine, neck, eyes and memory. Prior to 1830, the stone was known as Stone of Micah-zima, an ancient ice god in the Slavic regions and for its ability to change and cause that change to manifest itself in the natural world. It has a nice vibration that can interact with the human aura and assist in changes in the spleen, pancreas, and testicles. Alexandrite changes from green to red, mauve or brown in incandescent light, thus making it the stone of change and good omens. It is the modern traditional stone for those born in June. Alexandrite is mainly treasured for its regenerative

properties. This stone can be charged in direct sunlight or moonlight depending on their function.

Amazonite is used for soothing the nervous system, strengthening the meridians and improving thinking and concentration abilities. Amazonite comes in blue, green, and white. Amazonite gets rid of aggravation, helps pacify bad situations. It aligns physical and astral bodies, thereby producing balancing and preventive energy. Practitioners use it in Money spells and in spells to attract positive forces dealing with finance. Amazonite Works wonders as an elixir boiled with chamomile tea. This mystical stone is called Amazon Jade. Amazonite falls under the domain of Virgo and ruled by the Earth Elements. It is keeper of the earth spirits of the fawn. It is the stone of Beltane.

Ametrine is a mix of citrine and amethyst. It is used to Balance male and female qualities. Stimulates intellect and helps one reach a higher state of meditation and attunement. Ametrine disperses negativity from ones aura, stabilizes qualities of pure light energy. Releases blockage of

the physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual bodies, allows for release of tension. To charge this beautiful stone, place it in running water.

The magical crystal, Apophyllite creates a conscious connection between physical and spiritual realms. This stone allows recognition or want to act on the truth in all situations. Apophyllite enhances mindful analysis touched by universal love. It aids in astral travel. This stone also allows you to see into the future. Good stone for gazing when looking sideways into the crystal. Also used to charge objects. This is a stone best renewed by the moon.

All Hail. The stone of Poseidon, the Stone of courage. The Aquamarine is used for calming the mind, lifting the spirits and preserving innocence. This is a good stone for seers and mystics and those seeking intelligence and self-knowledge. Soothes emotions and nerves and is healing for eyes, liver, stomach, glands and swollen feet. Aquamarine is a pale aqua blue colored stone. This stone helps in providing shielding the aura and subtle properties. The

Aquamarine is the Dolphin Animal Spirit stone. It is ruled under the astrological sign of Pisces and all water elements. Aquamarine should never be exposed to direct sunlight. Many use this gem as the birthstone for the month of March when it is actually the lucky stone for Scorpios. When this stone needs renewed, place it in a running stream under the light of the moon.

The Crystal Aragonite is used for centering oneself with ease. It can be helpful during anger and stress during meditation. The spirits of Aragonite provides insight and enhances patience. It can be used to combat chills, and warm body parts. Aragonite is recharged under the rays of the sun. But care should be used and this should only be done every seven to nine days on a Wednesday.

Azurite is the stone of the Angel Michael. It is believed to reveal to the owner the purpose of life and open pathways to truth. It is called "The Stone of The Upper Realm or Stone of Heaven". To aid psychic development and help open the third eye center. Azurite is a mineral combination of copper and encourages sympathy, understanding

and intuition. It is also used in meditation. When used as a healing stone, it is helpful for rebuilding cells, dissolving diseased tissue and for arthritis, knee problems and hip pain. Colors range in Rich deep blue, sometimes with areas of green when it grows near malachite. You can ground this mineral and make a ritually powerful dye or ink. This stone is ruled by Sagittarius. Use this wonderful stone to make a pendulum. It is very beneficial in scrying out the correct answers to problems. You can recharge this stone with salts and earth, for a quick fix, hold it under the rays of the waxing moon and watch the rays energize it.

Golden Beryl is the stone of Leo. It is used in rituals of Purity, initiative, independence. It instills guidance in your mystical works. Teaches its wearer to do only what is necessary. Opens and activates crown and solar plexus chakras. Induces a wiser intellect for the practitioner and promotes a will to succeed. This wonderful stone is also known as Heliodor. This stone is a yellow to golden color and is sacred to the God, Pan. One of the most versatile of the crystals, with the

exception of the quartz, is Onyx. Golden Beryl should be charged under direct sunlight, but never leave it there for more than a few hours, for an over charged Beryl may be lazy. Beryl comes in a variety of colors and has been known by many names. According to the “Magic of Kiram” published in 1685, it was the stone of all life and could be the reconciler of friends and family.

Onyx aids in clear thinking, imagination and decision-making. It promotes fidelity and attracts fortune. Onyx comes in a variety of colors that are used in different aspects and rites. Its colors are usually greens, brown, or black. It contains the properties of Chalcedony, as well as being an excellent stone for centering and aligning the total person with higher powers. It can aid in getting rid of grief, to enhance self-control and to stimulate the Power of the wise in decision making. The green variety encourages happiness and good fortune. Mexican Onyx, which is a brown color, is used to aid sleep. The most common, Black Onyx, helps change bad habits and grounds the practitioner in magical Workings. This stone is

ideal for a protective amulet with the right insignia drawn or engraved directly into the stone. It is said to bring happiness and good fortune into one's life. Onyx enhances visions, reduces fevers, energizes the system, and is a general nerve soother and emotional centering agent. When it is black it represents the First Chakra. Onyx should be charged by the moonlight or burying it in the earth.

The Opal has similar effect to moss opalite. Color: varies (multi). The Opal allows you to shed your inhibitions. It can strengthen the memory tenfold. Opal is known as the "Stone of Change," awakens both psychic and mystical qualities. Use the opal's vibrations for happy dreams. It aids in the understanding of the higher powers of intuition and mysticism and the knowledge to know how to use it. Used by Shaman to invoke Visions. Aids in helping to disperse infections and purify the blood and kidneys and regulate insulin production. In many cultures the opal is a bad luck stone and thus be very careful if this gelled stone does not call you. It is believed that it is one of the only stones that can trap some evil spirits.

The Boulder Opal has a connection to the stars. It aids in communication between earth's plane and the "star people" of this and other worlds. It has a grounding action as well as providing enhancement to the transfer of information. It enhances healing properties and initiates healing on all levels. This opal aids in releasing the "cobwebs" from one's mind so that one has clarity and emotional security.

The Fire Opal is generally what people think of when they think of this gemstone. It adds brilliance and clarity to the intuitive and reflective process. This is the stone of mystery, variety, progress, and Change. It Aids in helping maintain one during stressful situations. Helps aid with feeling burnt out.

The Green Opal promotes a relaxed state similar to meditation. Helps provide information for problem solving during the dream state or day dreaming state.

The Pink Opal is called the "Stone for renewal." It has the ability to renew relationships between "All that is" and self. It is said to teach

love and nonviolence in all acts and deeds. Pink Opal is also known as the "stone of spiritual awakening" and is used to aid the practitioner in inner healing on all levels. The Opal is the mystical birthstone of April and modern birthstone of October. Opals should always be stored in water, oils, and liquids to keep them from cracking. Charge the opal with water and moon.

Boji Stones and a unique and rare stone to own. They Balance and aligns chakras and subtle bodies. These stones are a composite of palladium and pyrite. They are wonderful to removes energy blocks. This is an excellent stone for energy. It cleans and fills all voids of energy in the aura. It combines both initiative and independence. It is excellent for grounding oneself. Good stone for healing in general and tissue regeneration. This stone is very old, as old as earth itself. It contains the creative powers of the earth, thus becoming a container for the energies of balance. Unlike any other stone, they are held together by the energy within. If the energy is depleted or destroyed, the stone changes molecule structure from 7.4 hardness

and returns to dust, just like the human body. Just like humans these stones come in male and female. The male stone is characterized primarily by the uneven, sharp, protruding patterns on their surface and the female smooth rounded ends. The stones work better when used in pairs, one male and one female. These stones never need to be recharged.

Bowenite is often called Korean Jade. It helps with depression, insomnia and indigestion. Bowenite sharpens spirituality and vision when worn with Chrysoprase. It is called Korean Jade because of its pale green color. It is strongly related to serpentine and for this reason can be substituted for that stone in your rituals. This green stone is good for sculpting your alter pieces. It is also best to recharge this stone in the light of a full moon.

Calcite (also known as flowstone) is used to enhance mental clarity and allaying anxiety and to aid awareness and intuition. It also comes in a variety of colors. It is found in many other minerals and stone combinations. Red Calcite will Increase energy while uplifting emotions. It is helpful in the

aid of willpower. It opens the heart chakra and teaches all humanity the power of will. It is an excellent stone for learning and studying arts and sciences. Clear or gold calcites are excellent energy sources used at the crown chakra. Clear calcite is used on all chakras to clear, energize, and revitalize. Green Calcite rids the body of infections and provides a barrier to diminish the effect of disease. Used with Lepidolite and Quartz it eliminates Candida. Green calcite is also the stone of the afterlife.

Optical calcite crystals placed on your altar will double the strength of spells. Clear calcite is used in spirituality rituals and as a focus for meditation. Improves memory and helps you draw more insight from books or personal experiences. Has a calming effect for the holder. Calcite should be recharged every thirty days by placing it in the rays of the moon.

Celeste is used to Recall and acknowledge spirituality and gifts of the Divine. Its main use is a balancing stone. It Stabilizes yin and yang values in the energy field and Promotes a pleasant

disposition. This stone "tells stories". Provides access and transfers information from the purity of the angelic realm. Celeste Assists in Clairaudience. It is a stone helpful for astral travel. Excellent for assisting in dream recall and dream therapy. It can be recharged when necessary by placing it in direct sunlight.

Chalcedony is used for peace and confidence. It only comes in a bluish gray color if it is true chalcedony. It promotes cheerfulness and minimize over sensitivity while protecting against the evil eye. This is a very sacred stone and should be in all practitioners supply chest. It helps to reduce fevers and ailments of the blood. It was mainly used by the Ancients and Native Americans. It encourages brotherhood and peace among all peoples. This deep blue gray one is called the stone of faith and is used to ward off evil and give the wearer a sense of protection and purity. This is the most popular stone for ritual magic and charging a stone for spellcraft. We will see some specific rituals using this stone late in this book and in the future volumes. This stone in

one of its varieties is best to engrave your seals and amulets of protection. Based on the special variety, charging is optional based on use and need.

Chiastolite is known as the "Cross Stone," In early times it was worn to deflect the evil eye. Now it is used as a sign of devotion. When it vibrates, it rids the wearer of negativity. This stone is a bridge for crossing over to the other realms of existence. It provides an unobstructed avenue as well as a means of transportation. Chiastolite is helpful during a state of change and assists on in traverse disquieting situations. It aids in astral travel and visualization of the mind. It assists in creativity and practicality balancing perspectives in all matters. This is also a stone used to lesson fevers. When a fever exists in a child, place this stone near the stone and the vibrations will help bring down the fever. Charge this stone in direct sunlight, but only in the morning hours.

Chrysoberyl increases personal power and spirituality. It opens and activates the crown chakra while synthesizing energy of the third

chakra with the energy of the seventh chakra. It is lovingly called the "stone of immortality." It increases generosity and charitable acts. Brings peace of mind to those it finds itself near. The character of this stone is light and warm. Charge it once a week in the light of the mid-day sun.

For psychic development charge the stone Chrysocolla. Use this turquoise blue stone for meditation and healing. It attunes oneself with the Earth. Revitalizes and calms base, navel, and solar plexus chakra's. It eases emotional heartache at the heart chakra and Increases ones capacity of love. It can give strength and balance at the throat chakra. Assist in communication with spiritual forces. Use of this stone produces inner strength and Purifies the home while eliminating negative energy from within a person. Charge this stone when it needs renewed by placing it in the earth overnight.

Chrysolite can sometimes be mistaken as Olivine, Peridot, or even, Topaz, thus it can also be used as these stones in your rituals. The latter from records written by Pliny the Elder of a stone he called topazos, in connection to ancient Pharaoh

Queens. At one time it seems most green stones were called Chrysolite, the way blue stones were called Lapis Lazuli now! The name has an interesting history tracing from Middle English crisolite, from Old French, from Medieval Latin crisolitus, from Latin chrysolithus, and finally from Greek khrusolithos which was Topaz. It is considered the stone of astrologers and fortune tellers, believed to attract occult powers, encourage inner vision, tranquility of mind and ability to see into the future.

Chrysolite has represented the Sun with great pride and should be charged by the sun's rays. It is used to drive off evil spirits. It can be an uneasy stimulant to the system. It is ruled by Air Elements in chaotic form. It's Earth Element in plants and living greens. With fire, it represents willpower. It can be seen in proud picky Leo as well as Virgo who is the head Zodiacal woman in remembrance of those ancient Queens, Libra for its medieval connection and Scorpio who can sting with fierce power. It is also representative of contradictory Sagittarius. It is protected by the God Mars and has

special connections with Saturn, that problem planet; and Uranus in its context of sudden surprises.

Chrysophrase is used for psychic development, meditation and healing. It is a bright green version of Chalcedony. A talisman used to bring victory to the wearer. It makes a broken heart less painful and aids in clear thinking. Chrysophrase instills a state of grace within the wearer as it facilitates deep meditative states, compassion, and clemency. It provides for nonjudgmental attitudes and acceptance of oneself and others. It can reduce inferiority and superiority complexes. The Color is usually a Bright green and should be recharged with water or the full moons rays. It is called by many, "The Stone of Peace."

The powerful Diamond is the Christian symbol of Christ also known as the King of Crystals. It is used for invoking love and fidelity and bringing courage and longevity. It is also helpful in overcoming your enemies. Queen Mary of Scots has a talisman diamond to protect her from poison. It amplifies the energy of other stones

when placed with them. The diamond is worn on the "heart" finger in marriage to encourage faithfulness and purity of heart. This is an Ancient practitioner's charm that we still use today. The Color can range from clear to many other colors. Diamonds can be charged in direct sunlight if the need arises.

The Herkimer Diamond provides delicate harmonizing energy. This double terminated quartz makes an excellent meditation stone. It Enhances awareness and spontaneity and aids in beginning again in this lifetime. It is best known as the "attunement stone". It Aids in attuning self with another person. This stone is used prior to the "Laying-of-Stones." Stimulates and strengthens Clairvoyance and Clairaudience abilities through meditation and also assists in telepathic communication.

Dolomite Encourages charity, relieves sorrow. Helps in dealing with hyperactive people, gives one lots of stamina. Its primary usage is to stop leakage of energy from all chakra's. It Aligns, balances and provides blockage removal of

energy. It gets rid of black energies that would otherwise cause sickness. Dolomite can be charged in the full light of the sun's rays on the day of Gabriel.

A Royal gem of sparkling green shall bring you love and things unseen. The Emerald is used to increase intelligence. The Emerald is the stone of prophecy, business success, emotional stability and understanding. Promotes love and is believed to be a link with divine forces. Emeralds are the stones of Truth. Used in healing for eye troubles, skin ulcers, insomnia, epilepsy, colds, headaches, asthma and the pains of childbirth.

Its colors are bright, clear or mossy green depending of quality of stone. This is the gem of the angel Ariel. its magical properties have been known for centuries. The very first Emerald mines were in Egypt, dating back to 1650 BC. Queen Cleopatra was fond of engraving impressions of herself into Emeralds & presenting them to guests as charms to draw people near her. Solomon's marble floors were made of emeralds brought from the earth by the demons and spirits he summoned.

The Emerald is the stone to reaffirm yourself at rites and initiations. Emerald is the birthstone of those born in the month of May. This is the stone of Venus and Aphrodite.

Fluorite is used for encouraging positive vibrations in all things. It balances energies of the universe and opening chakra's and strengthening bone tissue. It is one of the most sacred stones because each stone contains the spirit of the fairies and forest deities. It is called the fairies wish stone and can never be bought or sold. The purple blue variety is called Blue John. It can only be acquired as a gift. Its colors are usually clear or purple shades. Blue Fluorite aids in developing orderly thoughts in sequence. It is also good for keeping your records in order. It produces a calm energy when it is near. Chinese Fluorite is an excellent stone for protecting against disease. This stone should never be in direct sunlight as this will weaken it. Charge it under the rays of the Full moon and in the forest, where it is believed that the spirit contained within can breathe.

Garnet helps in the development of

clairvoyance and makes the mind pure, hopeful, cheerful, confident, honest, frank, faithful and sincere. It stimulates the imagination and helps depression and laziness. The Garnet, sometimes confused with a ruby is believed to aid skin problems and strengthen the base of spine. The red variety is also called Pyrope and the purplish-pink is known as Rhodolite. It is used as a symbol of remembrance between parting friends. Garnets come in a variety of color. Garnet is the birthstone of those born in January and one of the planetary stones of Scorpio.

Hematite is used for courage and endurance, strengthening heart, regulating pulse, and for ulcers, cramps and blood disorders, i.e., anemia, plus inflammation of joints, fatigue and melancholy (especially during pregnancy). Hematite is the Stone for the mind. It enhances memory and balances the whole body. Hematite will break if it is worn next to the skin of someone whose life is totally out of balance. The Color is generally metallic silver gray. Do not immerse this stone in water. It should be charged by wearing next to the

skin. American Indians used to crush hematite and mix it with animal fat to produce red and brown paint for their artwork and their bodies (red ocher). This practice has carried over to the practitioner because this is one of the inks that we use to write in our personal book of Shadows.

Jade is used for warding off spirits, safe journeys, wisdom and long life and for slowing down ageing. Jade brings peace, serenity and is a good for high blood pressure, heart and circulation problems. If you suffer from diabetes, kidney or bladder problems, it is suggested that you wear this cold stone.

Jade is the pale green stone of fidelity. It provides peace, harmony, and tranquility through emotional turmoil, and can protect love from straying. This gemstone promotes self-worth and sufficiency, allowing the wearer to build dreams into reality. Its merits are well known in Asia in aiding emotional soothing and protecting health. It is even said that Jade has the power to add a warm glow to the skin. Jade has a curse to those who take it without payment or theft. It is given as a gift

increases its strength.

The Blue-Green variety of Jade can help people in situations in which they can't control and the Lavender Jade helps to aid in emotional hurt.

Jasper has the magical properties to protect against the evil eye, witchcraft, and phantasms. It is the stone used to reflect spells back to the sender and encourages the person to do good deeds. Use this stone to improve the sense of smell, calming emotional problems and guilt feelings, lowering blood pressure and helping kidney, stomach and bladder complaints. Colors can vary, usually yellow/orange or red.

Red Jasper grounds energy rectifies unjust situations. Aids in dream recall. As the "stone of health" it strengthens circulatory system. Connected to base chakra it aids rebirthing of body and spirit. Poppy Jasper is used for happiness and positivism.

Yellow Jasper protects one during spiritual working and during travels away from home. It Helps to channel positive energy and reflects negative ones. Green Jasper Aids in healing

disease and releasing obsession. Green jasper is essential when combining stones in spells involving money. Blue Jasper connects one to the spiritual world and Balances the yin and yang and spotted Dalmatian Jasper Brings the physical, emotional, and intellectual bodies into symmetry with spiritual energies.

Rhyolite or leopard skin Jasper, promotes Change, variety, and progress. It Strengthens both body and mind and is an excellent stone for meditation. It advances attunement in all activities. Helps reveal the past and progress to the future. It is known as the "Stone of resolution." Jasper is a stone that should be charged in the light of the full moon.

Kunzite is used to activate the heart chakra as well as aligns it with the throat chakra and third-eye, holding the stone in this place you get a powerful feeling of peace that gently goes to the core of ones being. It aids in removing obstacles from ones path and Dissolves negativity. Use Kunzite when you need to reach a deep meditative state. It was named in 1932 and promotes maturity

in thoughts and actions. It is an excellent meditative stone for getting one to relax and express the emotions of the heart. It can aid in accepting knowledge and external expression of unconditional love, self-love and romantic love. Charge this helpful stone under the rays of the noonday sun or full moons rays. This stone comes in pale pink or lilac colors and is good for embedding it in your magical staff. The Green variety is called Hiddenite and is used in rituals to draw money.

Labradorite represents the "temple of the stars," and is from extraterrestrial origin. It Transforms intuition into intellectual thought so one can implement the instructions given. Used highly in the world of spirit communications and the black variety symbolize the moon. It aids in advancement without constraints. It enhances the practitioners' patience and an inner knowledge.

Lapis Lazuli is the stone used for development of psychic abilities. It aids depression, builds hope and self-confidence and improves health. It is also called Lazurite and

believed to encourage fidelity in love and is used mainly in love spells. Helps one to find the inner truth and elevates the consciousness. This deep blue stone is called by all the stone of truth.

In healing it is used for heart, spleen, blood and digestive problems and brain diseases such as epilepsy. An “emotional sanctuary” Color comes in Deep blue, sometimes with tiny metallic flecks of silica. This stone should never be exposed to direct sunlight and may only be charged by the light of the full moon. Lapis brings a direct connection to the celestial plane and is a stone of make and females and unions of such. It was a favorite of the warrior because it was believed whoever carried this stone as an amulet into battle would never be harmed because they had the power of the gods with them.

Lead is sacred to the God of death, Saturn. It is the metal of scrying and divination. Lead is a byproduct of the stone galena. Lead is used to communicate with the dead.

Mother of Pearl is used for self-confidence and attracting friendship. It is also believed to

enhance the appearance of the skin. It is used to draw money, wealth and protection, relates to the ocean, depth and movement. It is the favorite of Neptune and charged in running water.

Pearls are used for endurance and emotional stability and to benefit the lungs. Pearl stands for Purity, clarity in higher forms of wisdom. It aids in cleansing channels for receipt of spiritual guidance. Pearls are also known as the "stone of sincerity." It inhibits boisterous behavior and Helps one to see ones reflection of self so that they can see the manner that one appears to others. Ground pearls placed in face creams are used to enhance the complexion.

Legend has it that Cleopatra dissolved a large pearl in a glass of wine and drank it to impress Marc Anthony with her wealth and power. Apparently this ploy worked all too well. Knights in the middle Ages wore pearls to the battlefield to protect themselves from harm and Queen Elizabeth I so loved the white gems that she had them sewn on all her clothing and wore ropes of them around her neck. In addition to its fascinating beauty, the

pearl occupies a unique spot in the world of precious gemstones. Instead of being found in a core of rock, a pearl is made over time by a living creature, an oyster and therefore is considered a living stone of mystics. The pearl never needs recharging. A wise practitioner will always have a black pearl in their magical items.

Peridot is the gemstone of Atlantis and Birthstone of August. Born of fire, it should never be placed in direct sunlight but charged in fire under the light of a waxing moon. It helps to obtain psychic vision and protect from delusions. Peridot can help the timid balance and uplift the mind and encourage serenity and trust. Aids muscle function, counteracts some of the effects of alcohol and is useful for stomach acidity, digestive problems and calcification. Peridot comes in a golden green color depending on the clarity of the stone. Peridot had the power to drive away evil spirits and the power was considered to be even more intense when the stone was set in gold. Peridot was also said to strengthen the power of any medicine drunk from goblets carved from the gemstone. On the

island of Hawaii, it is called the Goddess Pele's tear. This wonderful stone is the stone of springs first day and renewal of life after a long winter. It is also known as Chrysolite.

The stone Pietersite assists in meditative states allowing one to experience visions and precognitive thoughts. It aligns the whole body's energy centers. It makes a wonderful grounding stone, not to earth but to the spiritual body. It has long been named the Tempest stone because of its calming effects. This stone contains the "keys to the kingdoms of heaven." It aids in recognition of the beauty of the soul and Promotes loyalty in friends and lovers. Pietersite was created by the twelve ruling angels as a specific anchor of angelic energy to stimulate humanity's use of the divine creative potential in Earth.

Prehnite is used to multiply energy and enhances protective fields around the practitioner. This stone should always be present when casting a magic circle. It Produces calmness, brings structure of coherence the environment. A is said to be a "stone for dreaming and remembering." It

aids in a deeper state of meditation. It enhances your ability of prophecy and seeing the future. It Encourages visitation of extraterrestrial beings since it is the link created by them. Predictions from this stone are usually precise and accurate. It comes in colors of green, gray, yellow, and white. Use of this stone should NOT be taken lightly and one should not misuse its guidance for selfish gains.

Pyrolusite Aids in transformation and transmutation of one's physical, emotional, and intellectual bodies. This magical stone has the ability to bring energy for reconstructing one's life and changing stabilization in relationships, marriage, mental process, emotional, and physical imbalances. Its vibrations allow for realizing each person shares powers of the universe and aids in healing and balancing the aura and getting rid of negative energy. This stone should be ritually charged by the High priestess on a major Sabbath night and given to return to the owner for use.

Rhodocrosite integrates physical, emotional, and mental fields while reducing depression and

retarding ageing. Bearers of this stone inspire forgiveness and helps owner face reality and new situations. It is a stone of "love and balance." Restores balances to these areas. Cleanse and renews for purification and attunes to a higher self.

Rhodonite helps lessen worry, depression, confusion and inconsistency, eases foreboding and disturbing influences. It is the Ideal crystal for mediums. Helps thyroid function, central nervous system, digestion and muscles and when worn on the third finger of left hand is believed to induce compassion and sensitivity to higher values. Its Color is usually orange. It can clear the path to balance the yin and yang. It is most famously known as "The Stone of love". The practitioner uses this stone to reach his or her greatest potential. It provides grounding of physical and mental energy. Rhodonite gets rid of anxiety and promotes coherency in all your workings.

Sardonyx brings happiness to a marriage and is used to attract friends. The vibration of this stone is good for self-control and good fortune. From medieval times it has been called the "stone

of virtue." Red Sardonyx is called the Stimulating stone because its energies seem to stimulate activity in your life.

Serpentine has always been worn to protect the wearer from snake bites. Its vibrations have been known to cure ulcers, swelling, and rheumatism. It clears clouded areas of the chakra's and stimulates the crown. Use this stone to enhance meditation. Diabetics and those with too much or too little sugar in the blood should make this stone their friend. Serpentine has also been used in the absorption of calcium and magnesium.

Serpentine makes a wonderful carving medium for you charms and ritual items requiring stone. It derives its names because of the various colors that are in the stone and the resemblance to that of snake scales. When using this stone for snake bites and cures for venom, it must be left in its natural form and cleansed after each use. Serpentine is the stone of Scorpio, Gemini, and Cancer.

Selenite is used For clarifying thoughts and expanding mental powers. It is a form of Gypsum

and can be used to access your past lives and removes energy blocks. Selenite assists the practitioner in communing with the spirit guides and should be worn by mediums. This powerful rock is the only one that can cleanse crystals when they are filled with negativity. Charge them in direct sun light when they are in need of regeneration.

Sodalite is used for courage, endurance, open-mindedness, logic and rationality. This is the stone of Youth. It brings light-heartedness, youth and freshness to any situation. It is used to lower blood pressure and fever by placing it on the body of the person who suffers these ailments. This stone is believed to have a healing effect on animals if placed near their domain. The Color of this stone is usually Dark blue. Used as a purifying agent for the body. It can helps in persons who suffer from insomnia and other sleep disorders.

This dark-blue stone is one of the most grounding of the blue stones, and has a natural affinity with the third eye center (between and slightly above the eyebrows). Its function is to

calm the emotions and the mind and to help one view a situation and the choices which may stem from it with objectivity and detachment.

Spinel strengthen character, brings idealism and harmony and decrease stress. It is strange that the properties associated with this stone would be so positive since it is also the stone that has brought the most controversy. Spinel is the greatest imposter of gemstone history. Many famous rubies in crown jewels around the world are actually Spinel.

The most famous is the Black Prince's Ruby, a magnificent 170-carat red spinel that currently adorns the Imperial State Crown in the British Crown Jewels. The Timur Ruby, a 352-carat red spinel is now owned by Queen Elizabeth once belonged to the practitioner of Old and has the face of a Mongrel demon engraved on it. But spinel is very useful to the practitioner, it is used to promote nerve and muscle function and aid stomach acidity and lessen depression. Spinel is good for spine and spinal regions. A stone favored by musicians as it is said to inspire them. The Color of this stone

is red and as we have seen is often mistaken for a ruby.

Sugilite is also known as Luvilite because of its practical uses in Love magic. It Uplifts and brings energy while absorbing the emotional garbage of life. Works wonders for headaches. It can be charged by placing in salt or under the rays of the moon. Its beautiful purple color makes it ideal as a stone for color magic when it a pure form. Some have banded colors in the orange and red spectrums. It is the stone of Balance and is often associated with Virgos and Libras.

Sunstone is used for contemplation and remembering dreams. Sunstone clears, energizes, and brightens chakras. Dissipates fearfulness, alleviates stress, and increases vitality. It is known to encourage independence. This stone was thought to represent the "Sun God." It can bring life and abundance to those who wear it. It provides protection against destructive forces from the other realm. This stone is basically feldspar with color. Sunstones appear to glow as if they have their own energy. When the glow is dull, brighten them by

recharging them in the bright sunlight. Sunstone is an ancient gem; in fact sunstones have been discovered in Viking burial mounds. It was thought that the sunstone aided in navigation.

Tanzanite or Zoisite helps with change and uplifts the heart. Tanzanite comes in a rich purple hue with tints of blues. This stone has only been called Tanzanite recently, in the time of the Angels; this stone was called an Oracle stone by the people of the Massai tribe. Tanzanite should not be placed in direct sunlight and is charged by burying it in the depths of the earth.

Tigers Eye has always been the stone of good luck, protection against witchcraft, and the evil eye. For centuries, tiger's eye has brought insight into one's own faults and guides seekers towards right path. It is used to help hypochondria and asthma. It is golden brown in color and banded or stripes of varying shades. This mystical stone has translucent sheen associated with the cat's eye, hence the name. It is the planetary stone for Gemini and the Hindu birthstone for November.

Tourmaline comes in a variety of color and

uses. Green tourmaline helps balance and healing and is best for males. Whereas, Pink is best for females. For cheerfulness and reconciliation, intuition, protection from enemies, negative vibrations and misfortune, you should wear this stone according to your gender. It Allays nervousness and brings confidence and calm. Helps clear the chakras. Used for lymphatic problems, anemia, indigestion, neuritis, weight problems and for helping muscles and nerves. A stone favored, by artists, musicians, authors and those in showiness. Always considered a lucky stone if it calls to you. Their color ranges and varying in shades, usually purple, green, blues or pinks.

Clear Tourmaline **is** an excellent stone used in healing and has all the properties of all tourmaline stones. It activates the crown chakra. Yellow Tourmaline stimulates spiritual development, solar plexus and enhances personal power. Blue Tourmaline activates the throat chakra and third eye. It Strengthens communication and psychic awareness while Aiding in relationship

toward others in a loving manner. It brings out ones true personality of a person. Watermelon Tourmaline is called the "Super Activator" of the heart. It compels energies and connects with the heart chakra of the higher self. Wearing this stone, the practitioner will see humor in a serious situation.

Black Tourmaline is an energy deflector. It protects you against negativity and victimization of others. It is an excellent stone for over exposure to radiation. It Increases ones physical vitality, emotional stability, and intellectual acuity. Black Tourmaline helps to hold on to ones "spirit" even during a time of sadness and gloom and protects against spells which were cast by the negative side of another. Also activates grounding between the first chakra and the Earth.

Turquoise or sometimes called the Turkish stone and is the lucky stone associated with the Buddha. It is also beloved by the American Indians as the stone of wisdom. It acts to bring wisdom and protection against misfortune or harm. It is considered fortunate for horses and their riders. It

reminds us of our spiritual nature and of earthly beauty. Used in meditation and for helping intuition. Good for throat chakra, higher abdomen, muscle weakness, eyes, headaches, fevers, foot, and leg problems. It encourages its owner to be positive in all situations. It is regarded as a powerful talisman. It comes in a blue green color that has a labyrinth of veins running through it. This stone has always been used to carve animal totems to place near graves to protect the dead. It is worn in breastplates to protect the living from harm and demon possession. It is the official Birthstone of the month of December and Planetary stone of Aquarius.

Variscite connects and aligns the ethereal nervous system to the physical. It aids in bringing one up from despair to a calm and peaceful existence. It Promotes tenacity, and aids in helping deal with the invalid. It stimulates the heart chakra bringing love and reason to all situations. Charge this stone in direct sunlight.

Each of these stones works in different ways depending on the practitioner who holds them. In

the study of stones, you can see that there are lots of uses for these ancient souls of the earth. It is very important that you connect with the stone before you attempt to use them. The above are generally traditional meanings the stones and you may get different results. What works for one may not work for others, so use the trial and error method. Become aware of the stones vibration and how they react to you. In making your ritual amulets, let the stones guide you.

Chapter Nine

Roll Call of Angels and Spirits

As we all know the craft is full of the old wisdom and many superstitions. These methods give us a way to connect to the God and Goddess. The unseen world of angels and the spirits that we use in everyday life can be awakened for the benefit of the practitioner and humanity. These Beings are called Spirits, Angels, Demons, Elements, and Deities by all. We all can see by looking at history, yesterday's Gods are today's demons. In reality, these demons and spirits are energies and beings of creation. Some are energies of those that have passed into another realm the ancients would call the underworld.

How do we know that these beings exist? Well scholars of the Bible and religious text of the

ages clearly show us of their belief in their existence, even though today's science would state they were figments of delusional minds. If it is easier to you, you may picture these beings as energies on the cosmic web that links all beings. These beings are more powerful than us and when we call on them with certain rituals, scents, and vibrations, they will come to our aid. We can look at one Biblical work, The Book of Enoch (I Enoch, 200BC), which tells the story of wicked angels who abducted and mated with human women, resulting in the hybrid race known throughout secular and Biblical history as the Nephilim (giants). For these actions against God, the creator judged the angels for producing the Nephilim. God decreed that the fallen angels (Watchers) were to be cast into Tartarus.

The Nephilim were also judged and it was determined that their bodies were to return to the earth in peace but their souls were doomed to wander the earth forever (as) wandering spirits..." Some would be embodied into the earth and plants of the earth, while others would be demons. From

legend, we discover that Solomon forced demons to cut stones and build the Temple. The demons worked during the night, and were so noisy that King Thabor of the Gentiles planned to wage war against Solomon. Once he realized that Solomon commanded demons, he abandoned that plan.

We can also look at the old Gods and Goddesses of other Christian assimilated cultures. Prior to 1217 AD theological and esoteric works written by Rabbi Judah the Pious, who died in 1217, were done on the existence of Angels. He was a spiritual leader of the Ashkenazi Hasidic movement. He wrote a document called "The Book of Angels" telling of their existence and the names of a many. We can also look to modern day sources and strange occurrences that have taken place. Was these persons deranged or did they actually receive knowledge from other realm?

Biblical text gives us no indication of the exact time of the creation of angels; their existence is assumed at the earliest times, before the creation of the second man, Adam. In the New Testament, Jesus and other prophets often spoke of angels and

there are many others speaking of demons and spirits that can cause man harm and assist them fore everyday life. These writings come from The Greek, Romans, Egyptians, Phoenicians, and many others.

The New Testament gives an order to these beings and states that demons are Legion (or many). The angels are said to be in seven orders. Those being: Angels, Powers, Principalities, Dominions, Thrones, Seraph(im) and Cherub(im). The creator bestowed upon angels great wisdom, freedom, and power and their many appearances in the New Testament are indication of the lead role assigned to them. Both the New Testament and Old Testament refer also to the fallen angels that are now placed in the pantheon of demons. One could concur that the deities of the conquered pagan lands also worshipped deities which were placed in the demon categories once the Christian movement came.

The Temptation of Adam and Eve allegedly support the existence of bad spirits or demons that were cast into hell from which they have no hope

of redemption. There is also the temptation of Christ and the story of casting demons into swine. This seems a total untruth because it is also clear that these beings are immortal and have a total lineage with the creator. Angels are purely spiritual or bodiless persons (Mt 11:30), some of who behold the face of God and thus are in bliss (Mt 18:10). These spiritual beings comprise the celestial court and are called angels from the Greek word for "messenger").

According to the Bible, they carry out missions at God's command. In order to complete these missions, they can at times assume bodily form. According to the Bible, their missions are sometimes of great importance such as the Annunciation (Luke 1:26; 2:9-14).

The angels are the objects of God's grace and love according to the religious texts. But because, unlike us they are non-bodily creatures, their response to God's love did not require time and reflection to grow and mature. As soon as they were created and received grace, they had the opportunity to respond to God's love and be

instantly allowed in the presence of the creator. The most significant activity of the good angels is to be the agents of God's particular providence for mankind. Thus, the Christian Church teaches that everyone has a guardian angel, based on references to them throughout Biblical texts.

This is all good information to know, but in truth the angels are one with the creator, as biblical text may state but the text fails to put them in their context on oneness. Earlier text than the dead sea scrolls seem to interrupt this oneness as, the angels being the same as god, the creator but on a different hierarchy and in different aspects.

We can gather many of the names for the angels from several sources of old texts. Many texts state that the angels are with both sexes and can appear and have sex with either male or female. This is also seen in the legend of the creation of the Giants in Genesis.

The first book we must view in getting information on angels is *Arbatel de Magia Veterum*. It first appeared in Latin in 1575 and gives account of some of the names of the angels

and what they have power over. As we shall see the names have been collected and preserved from many centuries by the ancients. Other source are; Book of the Sacred Magic of Abra-Melin, as delivered by Abraham the Jew unto his son Lamech, The Book of Enoch, Le grand Grimoire of Eliphas Levi, Grimorium Verum, La Clavicola del Re Solomone Tessoro delle Scienze Occulte, Peter de Abano: Heptameron, or Magical Elements, LEMEGETON CLAVICULA SALOMONIS or The Lesser Key of Solomon, and many others.

Let's now focus on the spirits of the unseen world that manifest themselves in everyday life. Some appear for the good of mankind, while others create mischief and chaos. They can be summons to assist the practitioner, but elaborate rituals are required because these spirits of light and darkness wish to see if the practitioner is wise and worthy. When calling these beings care must be taken to make sure that the wishes of the practitioner are adhered to. Sometimes the entities will take the letter of the request literal which will cause more harm than good. So practitioners beware, ask for

what you need, and sometimes you may get exactly what you ask for.

There are nine orders of the angels and spirits that are known as demons. They are divided into three hierarchies. Each of these hierarchies is divided into three orders. The highest is in the first circle or sphere, the intermediate is in the second circle and the lower the third circle.

The first sphere of angels is collectively concerned with the universe and the manifestations of divinity within it. They are operating at the highest level of the astral plane. These angels possess the deepest knowledge of divinity and creation. They were the angels who taught the first people created all the secrets of magic and healing arts. The angels of the first sphere are the Seraphim, the Cherubim, and the Thrones.

The Seraphim of the first sphere are those closest to divinity. Their main concern is to concentrate on vibration and manifestations to keep divinity constant and intact. They are considered the angels of pure love, light, and fire. These powerful beings make sure no negative energy

touches the realm of divinity. They also help create and carry positive energy through all the other divisions of astral beings and into the physical realms for mankind. They provide a protective wall around that astral plane to ensure its continued existence without contamination by negative energy. They funnel that energy toward us so we can feel the wonders of the creator.

The ruler of the Seraphim is Jehoel, Metaron, or Michael. These angels appear to take turns at the head of the group. Other angels named in this order are Kemuel, Gabriel, Lucifer, Seraphiel, Uriel, and Nathanael. The Seraphim shine so brilliantly that a human would die of fright should they sees Seraphim without invitation of those powerful beings. Only the Archangel Michael or Gabriel is capable of complete interaction with these beings. Some say their faces are like a bright star exploding. They are said to be cloaked like the glow of a blinding snow.

They are described as very tall beings, with six wings and four heads. Each head represents one for of the cardinal directions. One pair of

wings is for flying, one for covering their eyes for even they may not look directly at the creator. The other pair of wings is for covering their feet, which is almost certainly a euphemism for their dual genitalia.

Seraphims are ceaseless in their work and move faster than hummingbird wings. The word Seraphim means ardor, these beings of light work with consuming divine love and compassion. You can talk to them and request their aid in magic, but you may never see them. Magically, work with the Seraphim when you wish to raise energy for humanitarian or planetary causes. They listen to group ritual. To reach the Seraphim, burn a white candle for divinity, and a purple candle for the Seraphim.

The Cherubim function as the guardians of light, stars, and the heavenly bodies. They create and channel positive energy from the creator. Humans see the Cherubim as a sort of Beauty and the Beast combined into one creature. They manifest themselves in many different forms. Ezekiel portrayed the Cherub as having a human-

like body, with four arms, hands, and legs, but with some remarkable non-human features. The head of the cherubim had four faces, one of a calf, an eagle, a lion and a human. It possessed two legs whose feet were cloven like a bull's. It had four wings and was accompanied by a spinning wheel capable of flight. Some of this order also appears as winged animals with human heads such as the great Sphinx.

The Cherubim watch over all galaxies, while collecting and dispensing energy where needed. They are responsible for being the supreme guardians of any religious or sacred place where the creator is honored and worshipped. They are the highest guardians of the Lord and Lady of the craft.

When The Cherubim take on the form as personal guards, they appear wielding flaming swords. In this form they will be seen as a human body and an animal head usually a bull or ram. With one touch of the fiery sword, it is said that all adversaries are instantly burnt should this be necessary to protect their charges.

Some of the names of Cherubim's are, Ophaniel, Rikbiel, Cherubiel, Raphael, Gabriel, Uriel, and Zophiel. In your magical workings, when you are seeking divine protection, wisdom, and knowledge call on the Cherubim. It is believed that Gabriel is the ruler of this class of angels. To summons the aid of the Cherubim you must burn a white candle for divinity and a blue candle for the Cherubim.

The Thrones are the division of light spirits assigned to planets. They are also known as the Ophanim, these angels serve the primary function of being God's chariot. But besides this, they are also noted as being the dispensers of God's judgment; acting with impartialness and humility to bring about the desires of the Creator. Having the most bizarre physical appearance of the celestial host, they are described a great wheels, covered with a great many eyes and glowing with light.

One explanation given for this, besides them acting as God's chariot, is that they mark the end of the first Choir, where the emanations of God begin to take on more material forms and as such exist in

a state of transition. They create, channel, and collect incoming and outgoing positive energies. The Thrones are known also as "investigators of the creator," as well as teachers of humility. It is believed that they were the divine angels mentioned as the Watchers in Biblical text. Their name comes from the idea that all the power of the creator rests on their stable shoulders.

The Thrones have dominion over Justice and its dispensation. They will shine their light on injustices, and send healing energy to any victim to assist in their recovery. The prince of the Thrones is Oraphiel, Zabkiel, or Zaphkiel. Some of the other names given for these creatures of Justice and light are Raziel and Jophiel.

In magic we call on the Thrones for assistance in smoothing relations with groups of people or between any two individuals. If you seek stability, look to the Thrones power to direct you in the right direction. To reach the Thrones, burn a white candle for divinity and a green candle for the Thrones.

The second sphere or class of angels has

dominion and concerns with the governing of a specific planet, as well as those angels assigned tasks below them. They also carry out the orders they get from the angels of the first sphere as the initiate must follow those who have advanced in the practice of the craft. Second sphere angels take care of the cosmos and its interconnectedness. These angels are called Dominions, the Powers, and the Virtues.

The Dominions fill the role of divine leaders whose efforts are to integrate the material and spiritual worlds, without losing control. They carry emblems of authority, such as scepters and orbs. The prince of these angels is Hashmal or Zadliel. Dominion is the name of the oldest angel. Other angels mentioned are Muriel and Zacharael. They are responsible for all issues of leadership. They are the first and last word of the law of cause and effect. When calling on these angels you must be very precise because they are beings whose work is precise and they expect no less. Dominion angels bestow the gifts and talents of natural leadership. They strike out at corrupt governments

and politicians. Anyone who does not have the best interests of the people at heart should not call on the dominions and should be very afraid their actions will draw the attention of these bearers of Justice.

If you are beginning an important project or have come across a problem with an existing project, call the Dominions. They will inspire and assist you in finding the best solution that will be best for all concerned. To reach the Dominions, burn a white candle for divinity and a pink candle for the Dominions.

The Powers are recorders of human events and destinies. The angels of birth and death belong to this group. They organize the world's religions and send divine energy to keep the positive aspects of them going. They function as regulators of chaos. The Powers are the angels of warning and will send you messages when someone is out to harm you or things in your life are out of control. They are the angels that cater to seers and mystics. They work through the human's sixth sense, accessing it to get us to listen to the advice they

have for us. These are the beings we hear about so much, “The Powers That Be”. The chief of the Powers is Ertosi. We have also references that this position of leadership is often interchanged and shared by Sammael and Camael.

Other angels in this category are Gabriel and Verchiel. These two angels are warrior angels, and you should call them when you are in serious trouble. The Powers are excellent at discovering hidden agendas designed to serve only one ego and harm others. They seek justice so make sure your cause is just if you happen to summons one of these beings. They will assist whenever you think someone is hiding things from you that may hurt you unjustly. These angels will defend your home, property, children, or any group who call on them for protection and defense. To reach the Powers, burn a white candle for divinity and a yellow candle for the Powers. Always remember to combine the proper herbs and gemstones for the special angel you summon.

The Virtues duties are to move mass quantities of spiritual energy from creation to the

earthly plane. This allows its use by the collective human consciousness in our rites and spells. This special group of spirits is known as the "miracle angels," they bestow grace and valor. The chief of the Virtues is called Pi-Rhe. The ruling princes of the order are Michael, Raphael, Barbiel, Haniel, Hamaliel, Tarshish, Peliel, Sabriel, and Uzziel.

Virtues are especially fond of those who try to go beyond their capabilities to achieve more than everyone says they can. This special group is the guardian angel of the socially called over-achievers. They love go-getters and positive people who try to enlighten and lead others toward harmony and self awareness.

The Virtues are the spirits of movement, working and guiding the elemental energies that affect our planet. Earth, air, fire, water, spirit, weather patterns, and planetary conditions associated with these elements fall under the domain of the Virtues. Virtues are the angels of nature and the practitioner. When working elemental magic call on the virtues to assist you. When you are in trouble or working a healing

spell, turn to the Virtues. To reach the Virtues, burn a white candle for divinity and an orange candle for the Virtues. Use the herbs and stones associated with the particular ritual you are performing and you will be successful beyond your wildest expectations.

The angels of the third sphere find themselves entwined the most in human affairs. This group of angels is the closest to the human race. It is said that this group were the most enamored with the affairs of men and interact with mankind on a daily basis. These angels are the angels who dwell in the mist and between the twilight on the earth. They constantly weave in and out of our lives, listening closely to human affairs. You can call on these angels when needed without an elaborate ritual. When you are standing in silence, asking what to do, it is very possible that one of these divine beings will be whispering the answers to your brain or making the changes you need to better your life.

The third sphere angels are the Principalities, the Archangels, and those simply

called the Angels. This contains the most numerous of these beings of light.

The Principalities are the guardians of large groups, such as continents, countries, cities, and other human creations on a grand scale. They are the guardian angels of the craft and covens in the craft. They work toward global reform and peace. You'll find them in boardrooms and swimming holes, wherever groups of people gather for learning, decision making, or just good old socialization and fun. They are protectors of religion and politics; they watch human leaders and help them make just decisions in human affairs when they are listened to.

The chief ruling angels of this order include Requel, Anael, Cerviel, and Nisroc. You should call on these angels in times of discrimination and unjust acts against you. They guard against the extinction of animals or people. They are responsible to remove or inspire removal of inadequate rulers of anything from a town to a company. To reach the Principalities, burn a white candle for the creator and a red one for the

Principalities.

The Archangels are rather an odd bunch of beings. They often belong to one of the other spheres, or societies of angels. They are the Special Forces, the navy seals of the angelic realms. Archangels are used to deal with everything from the top brass down to the newborn babe. They can move freely among us as all others and are common in dreams and visions. The four Archangels are Michael, Raphael, Gabriel, and Ariel. They are often known as guardian angels. These angels link themselves to matters of the human and physical manifestation. They funnel energies from us to the divine, and from the divine down to us.

Our guardian angels are assigned to us through all incarnations we have had on Earth. They are our best friends and our closest companions. They are with us at our birth and help us through the transition of death. They defend us when we are in trouble while helping us live and grow in the world. Guardian Angels are there to advise us and help us accomplish the tasks we

were placed on earth to do. Guardian Angels are bound to the law of free will of humans by the creator and will not interfere unless summoned to do so. When calling on the angels and guardians of the universe we must always think wisely and clearly.

While it is true that you think you are in need, you must also try to see the grand scheme of things and think how your requests may affect others. Always remember that the angels and spirits will not move to aid you if it goes against the grand scheme of things. Now it is time to look at specific angels and their representations of what they can do to assist the practitioner.

Gabriel is the Archangel of Communication, Teaching, Ideals and Mental Genius. Gabriel's shields of protection are made of golden white Light. These shields help to protect against the insults and negativity of other people. Gabriel's direction is the North and his element is Air. Those protected by Gabriel will feel the need to express your ideas to others and to the world. Your mind will be imaginative and creative. You will enjoy

learning and teaching. You will feel best in loose fitting white, cream, yellow or gold colored clothing. You will be attracted to Amber, yellow topaz, tiger eye, gold and bronze when he is nearby. He is the Messenger of the Universe.

In Biblical History he was the go between God and Satan. Gabriel's name translates to "Man of God" or "God is my strength". It was Gabriel who was the governor of Eden and ruler of the Cherubim.

Gabriel is the Protector of the South, of noon and the sun's heat and of summer. The color green is commonly associated with him. Gabriel is the angel of hope and revelation, of love and heart connections. He is the patron angel of those born in Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces. There are some who believe Gabriel was a female angel however all angels are created with both male and female sex and can appear in any form they deem appropriate at the time. Gabriel rules Mondays.

Archangel Gabriel and his twin flame, Archeia Hope, assist light-bearers in working with the light in the base-of-the-spine Chakra and in

mastering qualities of the white ray—purity, order, hope, joy and discipline. The seraphim of God also serve with Gabriel and Hope. The seraphim come bearing the light of the Father-Mother God. They can literally place their presence over us and we can absorb that light and energy into our bodies like a sponge. When we desire to unite with divine consciousness through purity of body, mind and soul, these angels can help us raise the kundalini to achieve that goal.

In Biblical text, Gabriel is the angel who appeared to Mary and foretold the conception and birth of Jesus Christ. He grants wisdom in interpreting our dreams and visions. It is often said, “When Gabriel blows his horn”, indicating that he is also the patron of musicians.

Archangel Uriel is the angel of Manifestation and Healing from past injuries. Uriel offers a cloak made of many colors to those who feel comforted by his presence. This coat protects the inner child in your heart. Uriel's direction is south and his elements are earth. Those close to Uriel will want to bring joy to those who are sad. They are

commonly in show business and fields that entertain people, especially comedians. Uriel teaches us to play and to keep an open heart in order to manifest our dreams and make them come true. He opens that energy center that keeps us connected to other people as well as to the God within us and all around us.

Uriel is also known as the Angel of Creativity, his name means "Fire of God." He kindles artistic fires in the heart and with the help of his charges, they inspire the results. Uriel is the patron angel of literature and music. He also grants the gift of prophecy and therefore inspires our clairvoyance's and psychic abilities. This Archangel is over the world and is known as The Angel of Repentance.

His typical symbol is an open hand holding a flame. In Christian tradition, Uriel is the Angel of Poetry and the Angel of Prophecy. Uriel also assists in communicating with nature, and can be called on to assist with material and earthly matters. He is one of the chief in the order of Seraphim and the order of the Cherubim. He is

often identified as the angel who stands at the Gates of heaven. Uriel's colors are the brilliant colors of the rainbow, especially green and red. Those close to Uriel may desire to wear emeralds, green obsidian, or Peridot and be attracted to gold, bronze, and copper. He is the protector of the East. He is guardian angel to those born under the signs of Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorn.

In the First Book of Enoch, it is written that Uriel is the Angel with dominion over thunder and terror. Uriel was sent to Noah to give Noah warning of the coming Flood. Uriel helped the prophet Ezra to interpret mystical predictions about the coming Messiah and delivered the Cabala to humankind. He also brought the knowledge and practice of alchemy and the ability to manifest from thin air, as well as illuminates situations and gives prophetic information and warnings. He is considered to be the archangel who helps with earthquakes, floods, fires, hurricanes, tornadoes, natural disaster and earth changes, call on Uriel to avert such events or to heal and recover in their aftermath. Uriel has held many titles in literature.

He is called Prince of the Sun, Angel of the Presence, The Archangel of Salvation, Patron of Prophecy, and Master of Tartarus.

In a portion of the Dead Sea Scrolls called the Gospel of Barnabas, Uriel is identified as one of the four leaders of the "War of the Sons of Light and the Sons of Darkness." The War itself is described in great detail in another of the Dead Sea Scrolls called The Triumph of God. In this story, humans are warriors and are given exact instructions about who is to fight where, with what weapons.

Archangel Ariel/Ariella is called in Hebrew the "Lion of God". Ariel is the Angel of the air and water. This is one of the great guardian angels and the Angel of New Beginnings In Life. He is the guardian of the animals and things of the air. This angel is also thought to be one of the key angels in the war of good and evil of Biblical texts. When Ariel is near you, you may begin seeing references to or visions of lions around you. Found in books of Judaic mysticism and Cabalistic, Ariel works closely with King Solomon in conducting

manifestation, spirit banishment and Divine magic.

Ariel assists the human realm to communicate and connect with the realm of Earth Angels. Ariel and his/her legion of Earth Angels can help us to understand the natural rhythms of the earth and experience the magic and healing properties of the trees, flowers, rocks and soil.

Ariel is the guardian angel of Scorpios born between November 8th and 12th. He/she ranks as one of the seven princes who rule the waters and is "Earth's Great Lord." In occult writings, he is the "third archon of the winds." He is also the angel who assists Raphael in the cure of disease. He is in charge of punishment in the lower world, controls demons, and is ruler of winds. In practical cabala he is regarded as originally of the order of virtues. He is known to be a conglomerate of Anael and Uriel, a sprite, and a rebel angel.

Archangel Camael is also called Camael, Camiel, Camiul, Camniel, Cancel, Jahoel, Kemuel, Khamael, Seraphiel, and Shemuel. He is believed to be one of the seven truly powerful angels who have the great honor of standing in the presence of

God. He is the angel that comforted Jesus in the garden of Gethsemane prior to his arrest in biblical text. He is also credit with having command over twelve-thousand fiery "Angels of Destruction." He along with Gabriel, and once Lucifer, are honored as rulers of the angelic orders.

He is Chief of the order of powers; one of the holy sefiroth; personification of divine justice. He is An angel who presides over beauty, joy, happiness, interpersonal relationships, self-discipline, and contentment. Camael grants gifts to those who summons and pray to him. Any activity on our part that emulates this angel, such as bringing gladness to others, draws Camaelic energies into our lives and enfolds us in wings of happiness. A good prayer for daily use if this is your angel could be as follows:

"Camael, Angel of Joy, descend upon the earth and give beauty to all things. Grant me what is just an right and with the beauty of perfect love in your sight."

Camael appears as a warrior dressed in a red tunic. He wears green Armour plates, an iron

helmet and has large green wings. He is a gatekeeper of Heaven. Camael is also known as the angel of Karma. He is ruler of the planet Mars and has influence over Pluto. He is the angel of Tuesday and his favorite stone is an opal.

The Great Angel Cassiel is the angel of the day Saturday. Cassiel is one of the rulers of the planet Saturn and is also the ruling prince of the seventh heaven. Cassiel is one of the Sarim (princes) of the order of powers. Sometimes, he appears as the angel of temperance. In Psalms it is stated "His dominion shall be from the one sea to the other and from the flood till the world's end."

Cassiel is the Angel ruling over games of chance and luck, and as such can become an assistant of good fortune. Cassiel is a patron Angel for the investor, stock broker, or gambler. Self-discipline and temperance are the two rules of good fortune, or luck, and when they are lacking, bring us sadness and anger.

Cassiel rules over the elements of Earth and salt and the metal lead. Our intentions on the days and hours of Saturn should involve Penitence,

Meditations, Maturity, Science, Investing or Business, Planning and Crystallizing. Clothing worn should be wine, magenta, or black in color. Diamonds, Aquamarines, or black colored jewelry should be worn. In order to be lucky, one must act lucky and bring "good luck" to all those around him, for the benefit of all. He works better with group ritual spells.

In addition to these angels of power we can also call on angels specific to our particular astrological sign. Each of these astrological signs is divided into thirty degrees. Each degree is guarded by a guardian angel, all working in conjunction with others to assist the practitioner. So we can see we have a guardian angel at every part of every day in every aspect of our being.

In this Angel Hierarchy there are angels of the month, days, and hours. The clever practitioner will always consider who is the ruling angel or spirit before summoning them and to which sign, day, element, and planet they are associated with. This is tricky business but well worth the time and research.

The Archangel Azael is a curious spirit. Azael which means “Whom God Strengthens” and is mentioned in Genesis as one of two angels, the other being Ouza (Aza) who came down from Heaven and was corrupted by the beauty of the daughters of man. He mated with Naamah, Lamech's daughter. From this union came the race of the Sedim, the Assyrian guardian spirits. Azael is believed to be chained in a desert where he will remain until the day when our creator sets him free. This does not make this angel unimportant, because his spirit, power and will are still free to come into our daily lives. It is also very unlikely that the creator would chain an essence of self in the desert.

The demon, Shamhazai is the same being as Azael (Azriel), guardian of hidden treasures. Many believe him to be a demon in this form. He is describes as having three heads and serpentine fingers. Azael is also described as being bearded, with a feminine body presenting breasts, a narrow waist, and broad hips. This also indicates that the demon is androgynous. He is the grand teacher of

the ancient ways and of witchcraft.

One of the most recognized names of the Angels is Azrael. He is known as an Angel of Death who is "forever writing in a large book and forever erasing what he writes. Azrael writes the birth of man, what he erases is the name of the man at death." Other faiths name the Angel of Death as a different angel: In Judeo-Christian lore, Michael, Gabriel, Sammael, and Sariel all named as the angel of death. In Zoroastrianism the angel of death is Mairya. In Babylon it is Mot. In Rabbinical lore there are fourteen angels of death: Yetzerhara, Adriel, Yehudiam, Abaddon, Sammael, Azrael, Metatron, Gabriel, Mashhit, Hemah, Malach ha-Mavet, Kafziel, Kesef, and Leviathan. In Falasha lore it is Suriel. The Arabic angel is Azrael.

Jewish legend says this angel is Rahab, who was destroyed by God for refusing to part the waters of the red sea for Moses. The new angel of death then became Yama (Malach ha-Mavet). The Talmud says the angel of death was equated with Satan, and became the legend that the angel of death was evil, rather than the good angel he is.

Azrael is also known as Izra'il, one of the four Archangels is pictured as having gigantic proportions. One foot rests in either the forth or the seventh heaven, while the other is on the bridge between hell and paradise. Azrael brought God a handful of earth so he could create Adam and therefore earned his title as the Angel of Death. Izra'il keeps a roll of humanity, on which the names of the damned are circle in black and the names of the blessed, in light. When a person's day of death approaches, a leaf with the person's name on it falls from the tree beneath God's throne. After forty days have passed, Izra'il must sever the individual's soul from his or her body. Azrael will be the last to die, but will do so at the second trump of the Archangel.

He is the angel who accompanies your soul to Heaven. The phrase 'the Wings of Azrael' refers to the approach of death; the signs of death coming on the dying. Azrael is a very helpful angel in invocations of life and death matters. He also makes a good intermediary between the creator and mankind. He should never be called unless it

is an extreme emergency.

The Angel Arariel (Azareel, Uzziel) is known as the Curer of stupidity and one of the seven angels with dominion over the earth. He was one of the original angels who taught man in the first creation before Adam. Arariel is specifically an angel who rules over the waters of the earth. He is invoked by fishermen so that they can catch big fish. Arariel should only be invoked in matters involving the flow of things. Now let's look at the angels of our personal astrology sign.

The guardian Angels of Aries are Angels of the Element of Fire. The First one of these is Vehuiah, who is the guardian angel of those born March 21st to March 25th. Vehuiah is one of eight seraphim invoked to fulfill prayers. He governs the first rays of the sun. The next Angel of Aries is Jeliel, who is the guardian angel of those born March 26th to March 30th. Jeliel is the heavenly prince ruler of Turkey. His dominion is controlling the destiny of kings and other high dignitaries. He gives the palm of victory for those who are unjustly attacked. In addition he inspires passion

between the sexes and insures marital fidelity. Sital guards those that were born under Aries on dates March 31 going through April 4th. Sital is a seraph to overcome adversity. He rules the nobility and is one of the seventy-two angels of the zodiac. He is also graced with being one of the seventy-two angels that bear the name of God.

When Sital leaves Aries, Elemiah takes his place and is guardian of those born April 5th through April 9th. Elemiah has the distinction of being one of the eight seraphim of the "Tree of Life" in the Book of Yetsirah. He rules over voyages and maritime expeditions. His corresponding angel is Senacher. April 10th sees the guardian as Mahasiah, who aids in things of the air. When this angel is your guardian angel it may appear that you are more careful in making decisions. Mahasiah leaves Aries on the 14th, at which time Lelabel becomes your guardian angel and makes you're like free of hard choices.

Lelabel is the guardian angel for those born April 15th to April 20th. He is the last of the guardians of Aries. He excercises dominion over

love, art, science, and fortune. We summons and pray for this angel's assistance to bring us good luck and fortune.

Astrological sign Taurus guardian Angels are associated with Earth Elements. The first one in Taurus is Achaiah. He/she is a Seraphim and the guardian of those born between April 21 and 25th. He is often called the angel of patience. He is the discoverer of the secrets of nature. From April 26th to April 30th, the guardian angel is Cahetel. Cahetel is one of the eight seraphim and is the ruler of agriculture. He is often invoked to make abundant crop production. He corresponds with the angel Ascicat.

Starting on May 1st and lasting until May 5th, Haziël becomes the guardian angel. He is the one angel that can receive the pity of the creator. When he takes on the form of an angel of darkness, he goes by the name Barnael and should be called on to destroy crops and bring havoc. May 6th to May 10th of Taurus has the guardian Aladiah.

Starting on May 11th and lasting until the 15th, One of the order of thrones becomes the

guardian. The name this creature or energy goes by is Lauviah. This mighty guardian shares the order of cherubim also and has influence over people of all walks of life. Use this great spirit of light when you are in need of a favorable decision from a superior. We will finish the sign of Taurus with the Guardian Angel Hahaiah. He is of the order of the cherubim with influence over the hidden mysteries of mankind. Gemini starts on May 21st and the elements of Air have dominion. Giel and Ambriel are the guardian angels who control others guardian angels born under Gemini. Just like the twins, all persons born under this sign has two Astrological angels, the one for the period of Birth and Giel and Ambriel, The angels with dominion over the zodiac sign Gemini.

Ambriel inspires clear communication so that we might better speak our own truth, while gently guiding human beings toward a time when truth and clarity will be the universal norm. Ambriel is also considered to be an angel of general protection. Ambriel also presides over the month of May. Those born under this sign pray to

Ambriel for special blessings and protection.

On the first day, the guardian angel Iezalel shall protect all those born until May 25th. On May 26th, the powerful angel Mebahel takes over and remains until the 31st. Mebahel is usually summons to aid in making sound decisions in affairs of the outdoors.

Hariel becomes the Gaurdian Angel of Gemini on June 1st and remains until June 5th. Hariel has the power to tame wild beasts. He is summonsed to filter impieties. He is one of the divine spirits that govern the sciences and arts. Thos who have him as their guardian angel tend to be more scientific and bring our artistic breakthroughs in the field of science.

On June 6th and lasting through June 10th, the guardian angel is Hakamiah. This is the angel that is invoked to deal with those who have betrayed you. He is also the Guardian Angel of the Country of France and sometimes called Verasua. He is followed by Lauviah, who becomes the guardian of those born on June 11th and lasts until the 15th. This angel is of the order of the thrones. He also has

great influence over the decisions of people.

On June 16th, The Guardian Angel Caliel steps up and remains until the 21st. He is of the second heaven and summons to assist you when there are great times of adversity. He is also called Tersatsoa or Tepisatosa. he is the last angel of Gemini.

The Water sign Cancer starts on June 22 and is guarded by the angel Leuiah. This angel is the guardian to those born until the 26th, at which time Pahaliah the converter takes over. Pahaliah is Guardian angel until July 1st. His other name is Sothis and he rules theology and ideals of the divine

On July 2nd and lasting until July 6th, The Guardian Angel is Nelchael. Nelchael in of the order of the thrones and appears to also be a fallen angel. This angel teaches astronomy, mathematics, and geography, to his fellow demons. His corresponding spirit is known as Sith. From July 7th until the 11th we see the Guardian Yeiyael and then from July 12th until the 16th, Melahel serves as guardian. The final Guardian under the sign of

Cancer is Hahuiah. He ends his service as Guardian Angel on July 22nd, when the Astrological sign moves to Leo.

Leo starts on July 23rd and is ruled by the fire elements. The first guardian Angel of Leo is Nithaiah, who is the poet of the order of the dominions. Solomon's wisdom states that he may be summoned by pronouncing his divine name and repeating the first verse of Psalms nine. He is in charge of occult sciences and prophecies. He leaves his charge to Haaiah on the 27th of July. Haaiah remains the Guardian angel until August 2nd, at which time Yeratal, one of the dominions becomes the guardian angel.

Yeratal brings light, civilization, and liberty to mankind. It is said that this Guardian gives Leo its name King of the forest. He also goes by the name Hepe. He remains until August 7th, when the guardian of Leo becomes Seheiah. Seheiah provides great protection against sickness and fire and governs longevity. He yields to the Guardian Reiiel on the 13th. Reiiel remains until the 17th at which time Omael is charged with this great

service to Leo. Omael in the angel of Chemists. He is not only a bright angel but also one that is considered on of the fallen. He is the last guardian of Leo and remains until Virgo begins on August 23rd.

The first guardian for those born in Virgo in Lecabel. This angel of vegetation and agriculture becomes your guardian if you were born between August 23rd and 28th. He relinquishes his charge to the Earth Elements signs to Vasairiah on August 29th. This being of light is one of the patron angels of nobility, magistrates, and lawyers. He rules over Justice. Vasairiah ends his dominion on September 2nd and then the Guardian angel becomes Yehudiah.

Yehudiah becomes the guardian Angel on September 3rd. In the Zohar is one of the chief angelic envoys. He descends with barrage of attending angels for the purpose of bearing aloft the souls of the persons about to die, or who have just died. He is a gentle angel of death. Yehudiah leaves on September 8th and Leahiah becomes Guardian Angel.

Lehahiah was once of the order of powers

(potentates), he protects crowned heads and makes subjects obedient to their superiors. He is or was, depending on his current status as a holy or evil angel one of the seventy-two hierarchs bearing the mystical name of God. He leaves Virgo on the 12th of September.

Chavakiah is your guardian if you were born between September 13th and 17th. When he goes out of Virgo, Menadel begins guarding his charge.

Menadel begins on September 18th and leaves Virgo on September 23rd. He is the last Guardian Angel of Virgo. He is an angel of the order of powers; also one of the seventy-two angels of the zodiac. Menadel keeps exiles faithful or loyal to their native land. He is called Aphut in the cabala.

The first guardian Angel of Libra is Aniel. He guards those Libras that were born from September 24th to September 28th. Aniel guards the West wind and is very important in casting a circle. Aniel is referenced earlier in this book so there is no point in doing that again. This angel of sexuality departs Libra on the 28th in the hands of

Haamiah.

Haamiah is the guardian from September 29 to October 3. He is an angel of the order of powers. He dominates religious cults and "protects all those who seek the truth." His is also called Serucuth in the cabala. He is followed by Rehael on October 4th. Rehael takes charge until the 8th and then Ihiazel becomes the Gaurdian Angel and remains until the 13th of October.

On October 14th we see that the guardian angel is Hahahel. His name is **also** spelled Hahael. This angel in an angel of the order of Virtues. Hahael protects missionaries and all disciples. He is called Chantare or Hahahel (Hahael) in the cabala. He is guardian in Libra until the 18th. On the 19th, Mikael becomes guardian Angel of Libra. He is the last of this astrological sign. He has influence in decisions of those that govern us and is helpful in uncovering conspiracies. His other name is Arpien.

Scorpio comes into the Zodiac on October 24th. This Water sign's first Guardian is Veuliah. He is an angel of the order of Principles; he is guardian angel until the 28th when he relinquishes his guardianship to Yelaiah who is guardian until November 2nd.

Yelaiah remains until Saeliah becomes guardian to those born from November 3rd to November 7th. He was once a virtue, but is now considered one of the fallen angels. He has dominion over vegetations and growing things of the forest. He is summonsed by reciting a verse from the ninety-third Psalms.

When November 8th rolls around, you are blessed with the Guardian Angel Ariel. Ariel ranks as one of the seven princes who rule the waters and is "Earth's Great Lord." In occult writings, he is the "third archon of the winds." He is also the angel who assists Raphael in the cure of disease. He is in charge of punishment in the lower world, controls demons, and is ruler of winds. In practical cabala he is regarded as originally of the order of virtues. He

is known to be a conglomerate of Anael and Uriel, a sprite, and a rebel angel He gives the guardianship to Asaliah on the 13th. Asaliah is an angel with dominion over Justice.

The last guardian of Scorpio is Mihael. He is guardian over those born from November 18 to 22nd. He is an angel of marriage and fertility.

On November 23rd, the astrological sign of Sagittarius comes into the night skies. Adnachiel is angel holds dominion over the astrological sign Sagittarius and all the Guardian Angels within the sign. Those who were born under this sign can pray to Adnachiel for special protection and blessings. We can all pray to this shining one for the spirit gifts of independence, honesty and gregariousness.

Vehuel is the First guardian Angel of Sagittarius. He will be the guardian Angel until the 27th, when he Angel Daniel becomes guardian to those born between November 28th and December 2nd and offers special protection to all.

The Angel Daniel is an angel of the order of principalities, according to Waite's, The Lemegeton; Daniel is called Danjal and is one of a troop of fallen angels, listed in Enoch 1. In the lower regions

he exercises authority over lawyers. On the other hand, according to Barrett, The Magus, Daniel is a high holy angel, one of seventy-two who bears the name of the God. He is followed by Guardian Angel Hahaziah.

Guardian Angel Imamah protects those born from December 8th to the 12th. In the cabala, he is an angel of the order of principalities, or rather an ex-angel of that order, since he is one of the fallen. In Hell he supervises and controls voyages, and destroys and humiliates enemies, when he is invoked to do so, or is so disposed. Nanael guards those born December 13th to the 16th, at which time Nithael becomes the principal guardian.

Nithael is a real character and very important to demonologists. According to the cabala, an angel formerly of the order of principalities. One of the 72 angels bearing the name of God. The prevailing belief is that Nithael joined Satan during the rebellion in Heaven and that now, in Hell, he governs emperors and kings, also civil and ecclesiastical personages of the highest rank. He is the last Guardian Angel of Sagittarius.

Capricorn bleats into the night skies on

December 22nd and the first guardian angel we see is Mebahiah. He stays as Guardian until December 27th, when Poiel, angel of Philosophy and wealth becomes the Guardian Angel of Capricorns.

On the First of the year, the guardian is Nemamiah. He is guardian angel from January 1st to the 5th. This sacred being is a guardian angel of all those who fight for just causes. He is especially protective towards people who defend the rights of those who cannot defend themselves, such as animals and children. When an injustice is done towards anyone, including ourselves, we can pray to Nemamiah to right the wrong. He is followed on the 6th by the Guardian Angel Ieilael.

Harael becomes the guardian angel for those born from January 11th to 15th. - This radiant one protects libraries, archives, schools and universities. Harahel opens our minds and hearts to new ideas while inspiring humankind to use this knowledge in life-affirming ways. The last Guardian angel in Capricorn is Mitzrael who is also called Homoth.

The sign Aquarius begins on January 21st. Archer is the governing spirit of the sign Aquarius who shares this post with Ssakmakiel and Ardarel.

They are angels of fire. The first birth angel is Guardian Angel Umabel, who is protector of those born from the 21st to the 25th. He is also called Ptiau, the water bearer of Poseidon.

The great angel of Meditation, Iahhel becomes the main guardian on the 26th and remains until the 30th. Seek this guardian angel when you are having trouble meditating.

For those born between January 31st and February 4th, you will be graced by the Guardian Angel Anaue. He is the angel who protects bankers, commerce, and merchants. Some call this guardian by the name, Aseij. When he passes, Mehiel takes his place and guards those born February 5th through the 9th. Mehiel is known as the angel of Educators and Authors.

February 10th brings the guardian angel of boats becoming the guardian of people born until St. Valentines Day. Then we shall see the guardian of all water animals being the guardian. Manakel. Manakel will remain guardian angel until the 19th of February. This wonderful angel is the last for astrological sign Aquarius.

The twelfth sign of the Zodiac is Pisces. This water sign is first guarded by the angel Eiael, who is guardian angel of those born 201

from February 20th to the 24th. Eiael has dominion over the Occult Sciences and is sometimes summonsed by the name Abiou by reciting the forth verse of Psalms thirty six. When he parts Pisces on the 24th, he is replaced by the Guardian Angel Habuiah. This guardian angel will remain for those born until the 28th or last day of the month of February.

Have you ever wandered why some Pisces are lucky and seem to have a knack for finding lost objects? Well if you take a closer look I'm sure these Pisces are born between March 1st and 5th. They have for their Guardian Angel, Rochel. He is the angel who aids us in finding lost objects.

When I lose things, I often find those born under Pisces and under his domain and ask them to help find it. By doing this I usually recover the object and I never have to misuse the power to summons. This is also recommended for other practitioners.

Those born from March 6th to the 10th are under the protection of Gabamiah. Haiaiel becomes guardian angel after him and remains until the 15th.

The sign of Pisces ends with the final

guardian Mumiah. This angel also presides over the medical sciences. He grants health and a long life as part of his protection. He is only summons by others on a Wednesday.

There are many more angels and spirits that protect humanity and the creations of earth. As a wise practitioner knows, these are not the only beings that protect and guide us in our daily lives. We have ancestral spirits and much more elements and creatures of the unseen world. In addition to list the angels, one should not believe that they are the only ones. There are angels of the month, years, air, trees, stones; whatever exists there is a spirit or entity that has dominion over it. As time passed and technology became so time consuming, we have forgotten the unseen world.

When summoning spirits we must be very careful. Always use the right names for what you seek. Make sure you have an affinity with the creature you call. For example you would never call a spirit that deals with Money to aid you in a task of love or health. You would also not call on Mondays Angel on a Friday. Others that can be summons will easily come to your assistance if your cause is Just.

When you feel that the cause may not be just and sound, call on the demons who are always around.

Aban is the angel of October; he also governs the 10th day of the month. He is sacred to the season of Samhain or All Hollows **202**

Eve. You can summons him for assistance in the field of Love matters. He is also a good medium for the souls of the dead.

Aduachiel is the angel of the month of November, who has dominion over the sign of Sagittarius. He alternates with Phaleg as a ruling angel of the order of angels. He is often seen in the form of a hunter or great bird. Summons this spirit angel by using cinnamon oils and candles of Yellow, orange, or green. He will assist the practitioner in spells of sight and distance seeing.

When your concerns are sexual in kind, call the angel Amabiel who always has sexuality on his mind. Travel not to another nation, without the aid of Abariel, the angel of transportation.

Plant trees and plants with loving care. The hands of the angel Abrid will guide you when ask. This is an angel of the summer equinox and effective against the evil eye. Abrid can be seen as the blooming flowers and can be summons with assistance in natural matters. This is the Angel of Gardeners.

When the Souls arrive in the afterlife, one of the spirits that shall judge them is the angel Abel.

He is one of twelve Powers with this task. He is an angel of the fourth Heaven ruling Sunday. He must be invoked from the Eastern direction. When invoked you should offer gifts of rose or gems of rubies to get him to do your bidding.

Ahadiel is An angelic enforcer of the law of man. This was also one of the Watchers sent to teach the first man. One of the keepers of the Symbols of Libra and a caregiver of all things just. The metal associated with this angelic being is Silver. Summons this being to get a second opinion when you feel unjustly treated.

If you are fortunate enough to have a special relationship with the angel Amitiel, you will have love, justice, peace, and truth on your side. This spirit of light has a special affinity for Libra and will come into your life when asked. In order for this angel to remain, you must be a person of honor and never do anything that can be considered of the shadowed areas.

Angels of Crescent Moon, the Throne Class, and Animals appear in the forms of Wolves, hares, cows and cats. They are the angels of your familiar or animal spirits and should be invoke for animal

protection. This would be important to farmers and any practitioner who desires communion with nature. Some individual Angels involved with this protection ring are Behemiel, Hariel, Thegri, Mtniel, Jehiel, and Manakel.

Anixiel is one of the twenty-eight angels governing the mansions of the moon. He is the angel of balance and harmony. We 203

appeal to Anthriel to help us stay on an even keel, leading our lives a life of moderation. Anthriel helps us stay calm in times of strife. Those who become easily off-centered and filled with anxiety pray to Anthriel for balance.

The Angel Apollyon/Abaddon is considered Guardian of the dark abyss (the Christian hell). Those who call on him must be very careful not to get caught in his snare. Abaddon and Apollyon both mean "destroyer." He is the ruling demon/ angel mentioned in Revelations. He is to be released from the Abyss during God's wrath on mankind in the last days of this age. This angel is mentioned throughout biblical text as being the king of Hell and over all the fallen angels or demons. It is not wise to attempt to summons this powerful angel of destruction. Those that do must be careful of his trickery. He will answer your questions and do your bidding, but be careful what you ask for. This angel will look for weakness so he can drag the invocator to his domain. He is the king of the black sun and the harvester of dissent.

A word of advice is warranted here. When calling demons to aide you, you must use care and

always stay inside the circle of protection. At first the spirit will tempt you, Do not fall for trickery and be sure to be specific.

One example can be found in the demon spirit, Andrealphus. He is the Sixty-fifth Spirit listed in the Goetia, who governs thirty Legions. He appears as a peacock but will later take human shape. He teaches geometry, mathematics, and astronomy. He can also transform man into bird shape. But once he has transformed you, he may demand more than you are willing to give and thus, may be trapped in the realm of demons until you discover a safe way out. It is always preferred to stay with the spirits of light or those that are least bound to the laws of the creator in the aspect of free will. It is important to have a powerful backup spirit that can protect and advise you in dealing with these spiteful spirits.

Arel is the angel of fire. His name is inscribed on the seventh pentacle of the sun. He can also be invoked in ritual magic to aid you in your needs and protect you. He is the Great Angel of Practicality and Common Sense and a good choice to call when dealing with demons or dark spirits. Arel will know

the soundest way to avoid the pitfalls the demon will lay for you.

If we are cautious and abide by the rules of the creator, we can summons the spirits of both light and dark to assist us. It is stressed, Only ask for what you need and be careful, because the 204

spirits of dark can be mischievous and very dangerous. There is no such thing as good and bad in the spirit world. Each spirit will always follow its true nature. 205

Chapter Ten

Power and Invocations of Demons

The powers of the universe are for all. We have seen how stones and herbs can be used to obtain our wishes. You have read how Angels protect you from all types of harm and aid you when summonsed with everyday problems. Each world religion or tradition seems to have its own idea of what is considered evil. It is very true that evil and good is much like the concepts of truth and a lie, it's all subjective.

When we begin to really see, you find many, many interpretations of what evil is and how it came to be in the world. Religions that have an omnipotent God, such as Judaism and Christianity, have some of the most elaborate constructions for the existence of evil, while religions such as Hinduism tend to have gods and goddesses with both positive and negative aspects. Therefore, when speaking of demons, our definition of the term will be something that has been considered a malevolent spiritual being, power, or principle. One persons demon can very well be another persons deity.

All Christendom states that Lucifer is a fallen angel and the King of all demons. The name 'Lucifer' means light-bearer, and is not used in the New Testament, where the "bearer of light" in the New Testament is Christ. He was once one of the Seraphim and sometimes called the fiery, flying serpents.

In the Occult Sciences, Lucifer rules over the East and commands the Europeans and the Asians. He is often referred to as the king of hell, and is superior to Satan according to demonologists. He is evoked on Monday in the middle of a circle which contained his name and remained content when a mouse or venison-bit was offered to him. Lucifer is described as gray with blue arms and red culottes decorated with ribbons. Lucifer has the face of a beautiful young child, which changes to monstrous and inflamed when he is angry. Lucifer is called a lover of justice in hell. He is also the first to be invoked in litanies of the Sabbath.

Because of the predominant Christian society, Lucifer has been lumped into many demons and names. Lucifer is called Satan, The Devil, Beelzebub, Mephistopheles, Prince of Darkness, Accursed

Dragon, Foul Spirit, and, Master of Deceit. It is strange that the Romans used the word Lucifer to refer to the planet Venus. It is 206

believed that this came about because those that summons this spirit were also involved in many sexual rituals. It has been noted many times that Lucifer is merely a term used for a state of fallen from grace.

Beelzeboul is called the great Prince of Demons by Solomon who tells us more about Beelzeboul's nature.

"And I summoned again to stand before me Beelzeboul, the prince of demons, and I sat him down on a raised seat of honor, and said to him: "Why art thou alone, prince of the demons?" And he said to me: "Because I alone am left of the angels of heaven that came down. For I was first angel in the first heaven, being entitled Beelzeboul. And now I control all who are bound in Tartarus . . ."

I Solomon said unto him: "Beelzeboul, what is thy employment?" And he answered me: "I destroy kings. I ally myself with foreign tyrants. And my own demons I set on to men, in order that the latter may believe in them and be lost. And the chosen servants of God, priests and faithful men, I excite unto desires for wicked sins, and evil heresies, and lawless deeds; and they obey me, and I bear

them on to destruction. And I inspire men with envy, and murder, and for wars and sodomy, and other evil things. And I will destroy the world." I said to him: "Tell me by what angel thou art frustrated." And he answered: "By the holy and precious name of the Almighty God, called by the Hebrews by a row of numbers, of which the sum is 644, and among the Greeks it is Emmanuel. And if one of the Romans adjure me by the name of the power Eleeth, I disappear at once."

Solomon therefore has listed the prince of all demons as Beelzeboul. Demonology by definition is a branch of magic that deals with malevolent spirits. In religious science it has come to indicate knowledge relating to supernatural spirits not considered deities. What are not taken into consideration is the facts that the demons of this culture are deities of others. To the Practitioner, these spirits are just spirits of the shadows and those that are not always willing to serve man and are tricksters to the unsuspecting practitioner. The word Demon actually evolved from Diamon, which means spirit.

This classification of is not unlike that system

of the Middle Ages, which divided all spirits into those belonging to the four elements; fire, air, earth, and water, or salamanders, sylphs, undines, and gnomes. 207

It is the same classifications of Angels; the demons were merely called fallen angels who had their own ranking in the angelic realms. Agares, Belial, and Barbatos, now demons, each had great rank in the order of virtues. Bileth, Focator, and Phoenix had been of the order of thrones. The great demon called Goap had been of the order of thrones. This now settled it went to reason that they could also be summonsed to assist the practitioner in their magical workings. Not only would the practitioner have a spirit of light to summons but a spirit of the shadows as well. Each would correspond to the darker magic and be as their lighter counterpart.

Zimmer, would be called "the lordly monarch of the north," Gorson, the King of the South; Amaymon, the King of the East; and Goap, the Prince of the West. The force ruled under Lucifer comprised nearly twenty-four hundred legions, of which each demon of rank commanded a certain number. Beleth was a great demon who rides on a pale horse, before him goes trumpets and all melodious music. He commanded eighty-five legions of other dark spirits. Agares, the first duke under

the power of the East, commanded thirty-one legions; Leraie, a great marquis, commanded thirty legions; Morax, a great earl and a president, thirty-six legions; Furcas, a knight, twenty legions; and, after the same manner.

To make it simpler for the Practitioner, demons are divided into a great many classes, and into regular kingdom and principalities, nobles and commoners. Satan is by no means the great sovereign of this monarchy, but his place is taken by Beelzebub.

Moloch is the Chief of the Army of demons and also guardian of Pluto. He is known as the Prince of Fire which would allude to him the elements of fire.

The masters of these infernal courts are: Adramelech, Grand Chancellor; Astraoth, Grand Treasurer; and Negral, Chief of the Secret Police; and Baal, Chief of the Army. According to this authority, each state in Europe has also its infernal ambassadors. Belphegor is thus accredited to France, Mammon to England, Belial to Turkey, Rimmon to Russia, Thamuz to Spain, Hutjin to Italy, and Martinet to Switzerland. In all there are in

the dark spirits 6666 legions, each composed of the same number of devils or demons.

We can see an interaction in Angels of Light and Dark. For Example, Atel is an Angel of Light, of the forth sphere who rules the element of Air and is evoked on Sunday from an easterly direction. His counterpart would be Pazuzu, a demon of the air, evoked on Sunday and comes from an easterly direction. Now that we have 208

discovered how to associate and hopefully gotten rid of the ideas of evil spirits being bad, lets look at practical uses and invocations for these spirits of shadows.

Abigor appears to the practitioner as a horseman carrying a lance, a standard, or a scepter. He commands sixty legions and is a grand duke of the dark spirits. He knows of the secrets of warfare, of the future, and can instruct leaders of the ways to earn their soldiers' respect. His counterpart is the Angel Auriel which means Light of God. Auriel is one of seventy-two angels of the degrees of the zodiac. Invoked in conjuration of the sword to assist the practitioner in leading the coven with love and truth.

Agares is Duke under the Power of the East and governs thirty-one legions. He appears as an old man riding on a crocodile and carrying a Goshawk in his hand. He can teach the practitioner the art of languages. When ask he can destroy Dignities and cause earthquakes on a large scale. He is also listed as an angel of the virtues. This spirit of the dark sometimes travels with Azacachia, a spirit of Light that is summons to confuse the enemies and assist

the practitioner in business.

Haborym who is also called Aym and Raum, is a fire demon and a duke of hell. He commands twenty-six legions. He appears with three heads, holding a torch and riding a viper. His heads are a serpent, a man, and a cat. He makes men witty and answers questions concerning private matters and the secrets of your neighbors.

For the practitioner who wishes to know astronomy and liberal sciences, call on Alocer. He commands thirty-six legions. He dresses as a knight and rides a horse. His face is characteristic of a lion, with an inflamed complexion and fervent eyes. When summonsed, do not look into his eyes until he has been made compliant to your wishes. This is the snare that most good practitioners are taken. Alocer will attempt to trick you and take a portion of the power of your life. Instead of summonsing this demon it is better to do many rites and call on the spirits of light.

An example would be, to study and request all the information on the planet Jupiter, call on the Angel Chismael, who is the spirit of Jupiter. Athanatos is a conjuring spirit of the planet

Mercury. Name of the god used to discover hidden treasure and in the cabala, a spirit invoked on the general citations of Moses, Aaron and Solomon. He will assist you in discovering hidden treasures and lost things as well as teach you all the secrets of Mercury or Erosoti, the planetary Angel of Mars.

Amdusias (Amdukias) is a dark spirit who governs twenty-nine Legions. He appears when summonsed as a unicorn, but will transform to human shape accompanied by the sounding of trumpets and other musical instruments when he is requested to do so. He has power over the trees of the forest and will cause them to bend at the invoker's request. Invoke this demon spirit to aid you in learning the secrets of the trees of the forest and hidden things of the trees.

Before you summon this demon spirit, you should ask the guardian Angel Hayyel who Protects wild animals along with Thuriel, Mtniel and Jehiel, if his mischief might harm their charges of the forest. Pray to them to protect animals from extinction. Hayyel teaches humankind that just as the angels protect us, so were they created to protect nature. Pray to this angel to inspire humans to become the stewards of all nature as we are meant to be. If they see no harm in your request, then you should proceed in your incantation of Amdusias.

Amon is the demon who commands forty legions and appears in the form of a wolf with a serpent's tail and vomiting flames. In human form,

he has the head of an owl and his beak shows canine teeth. He was the supreme deity of the Egyptians, who had blue skin in human form. Amon can tell of the past and the future, and reconcile the differences between friends.

Amy is a great president, and appears in a great burst of flame. This spirit will take the form of a man and teach the practitioner the art of astrology. He will also make your familiar totally subservient to your needs and wishes. Amy knows the location of the treasures that other spirits have hidden and will reveal them for a price. This demon has dominion over thirty-six legion of other demons and can be summonsed on a Tuesday. When calling this demon, also invoke guardian Angel Dameal as the guardian of your eastern watchtower. Dameal is Tuesdays angel and resident in the fifth heaven. Dameal is invoked from the east and will protect you when summonsed.

Andras is a dark spirit who commands thirty legions. He appears with the body of an angel and the head of an owl. He rides a black wolf and carries a saber. He can give advice on how to kill your enemy without detection, and can escalate

quarrels and discord. Because of this spirits attitude, you must be careful here. Andras may attempt to slay those that call on him as his price.

If you have been the victim of a thief, call on Andromalius. He governs thirty-six Legions. He appears in the form of a man 210

holding a serpent. He is responsible for catching thieves and returning their stolen goods, as well as finding treasures. To invoke this spirit of vengeance is simple.

First take every precaution, cast your circle and invoke the guardians of the watchtowers. Call the spirits by saying :

Oh great, mighty and blessed guardian's of the creator,(guardians name), who comes from the east, under the great Prince of the East whom you obey, who also is set over you as King by the Divine Power of the creator, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, Who is the disposer of all things in heaven, earth and hell: I, the servant of that creator, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, Whom you obey, do invoke, conjure and entreat thee, N., that thou wilt appear forthwith and protect this circle from all things. By the virtue and power of the same creator of all things, I do command thee from thine order or place of abode to come unto me and skew thyself plainly here before me in thine own proper shape

and glory, speaking in a voice intelligible to mine understanding. O thou mighty and blessed Angel (Name), I, the servant of the same creator, do entreat and humbly beseech thee to come and protect me from all things that I shall desire of thee, subject to the power of thine office and the good Pleasure of the Mighty unnamed one who hath created all things. By the three names of power, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, and by the name ANA BONA, I beseech and constrain thee forthwith to appear visibly in thy proper shape, speaking in my ears audibly, that I may have thy blessed, angelical and glorious assistance, familiar friendship, constant society, communication and instruction, now and at all times, herein and in all truths which the Giver of all good gifts, shall be graciously pleased to bestow on me. Therefore, O thou blessed Angel N., be friendly unto me, do for me as has been commanded of thee, whereunto I now adjure thee to appear it; power and

presence, that I may have your bountiful
protection O MAPPA LAMAN,
HALLELUJAH. AMEN. 211

You must do this at each direction to set your protective watchtower. When dealing with higher demons you should also invoke a protective spirit of the elements. When your primary protective circle is set and with the proper herbs and candles, return to the center and cast another protective circle which you must not leave once it has been cast. This circle shall contain the protective symbols of creation contained in the Keys of Solomon the king in accordance to the protection you seek. Once cast again according to the performance of your rite, place the appropriate stone, candles and herbs at each direction of the watchtower. Here you will invoke the God and Goddess to witness your act and protect you from all beings that are summonsed into your presence. You may now start your invocation of the demon.

It is very important to know the nature of the spirit that you are going to call and take precautions. Know their planets and elemental natures. Call the lesser dark spirits first because they are easier to control.

Make sure there is a gift to offer the spirit on a table outside the second circle. This gift should be

one appropriate to the spirit you are summoning. Standing in the center of the circle, hold up your magic Athame and recite the following:

Come forth unto me, Spirit whose name is
(name),

Appear in a form that is pleasing in sight
and smell..

Come forth unto me: To do my bidding in
the name of that which is creator of all
things. That art the Changeless: The Un-
nameable: the Immortal , whose Place is in
the Unknown, the Dwelling of the
Undying Gods.

I invoke in the name of The supreme Power
of the universe, come into my presence, to do
me no harm.

Come forth unto me and accept my offering
for your service.

Hear me Thou, creature of the creator,
Hear Thou in the habitations of Eternity;
come forth; and purify to Thy Glory My mind
and Will.

When the demon appears, give the offering
and make your request. Bear in mind that this

creature may challenge you and attempt to trick you, but stand fast and use the threats of the creator and spirits that are his superiors to get him to do your bidding. Once finished banish the demon and do not step from the circle until you know that the banishing ritual was successful. 212

Stand facing the East. And make the sign of the Qabalistic Cross and Say:

“Atah - Malkuth Ve-Geburah Ve-Gedulah Le-Olam Amn”

.

With arms outstretched say,
“Before me RAPHIEL. Behind me
GABRIEL. To my right hand MICHAEL.
To my left hand AURIEL. For about me
flames the Pentagram and upon the
Column stands the Six-Rayed Star of
Force and Fire.

Do this in all directions. You are now able to stand into the second circle and perform the thanks and dismissing of the circle as always.

Give homage to your creator and thanks to the kings of the spirits and seasons for their assistance. Such as if this ritual was done in the winter, give thanks to the guardian angel Attaris who is head of all the signs of Winter. He can control snow and the elements of winter. Perhaps you can give thanks to Attarib who is one of the four angels of winter. If your ritual is done on a Saturday morning also includes The Angel Balidet

who governs the Saturday air.

In controlling demons who are spirits of lightning, it is useful to also call on the guardian angel Barkiel. He is the Angel of lightening. Uriel also has had this title. Barkiel is also one of the angels of February and is cited as one of the archangels. This angel of lightening is also noted as the only angel successful in fighting Leviathan, the demon called envy.

Another popular demons that can assist the necromancer is the dark spirit Asmodee who is sometimes called Chammadai or Sydonai. Asmodee is the destroying demon and managing demon of the gaming houses. He is the dark side of the guardian angel Samael. It is said that he will be the one to dethrone Solomon, but that Solomon's will force him to aid in the battle for the Jerusalem temple. After Tobie expels him with the smoked spleen of a fish from Sara, the angel Raphael will bind him in the depths of Egypt. This gives the practitioner a clear clue in defending from this demon when summons. The guardian Angel Balthial is one of seven planetary angels and the only angel who can over come the spirit of jealousy. He is the

enemy of Asmodeus the great demon of jealousy.
Asmodeus, also is called Ashmadia, originated from
the Persian 213

Aeshma-deva or "demon of wraiths". Dagiel would be a very protective angel since this angel has dominion over fish.

Baell also spelled Bael and Baal is first and principal king. he has power over the east. When he is conjured, he appears with three heads; the first, like a toad; the second, like a man; the third, like a cat. He speaks with a hoarse voice. He has within his power to make men invisible and to reveal the secrets of the kingdoms. He is credited with the rule of sixty-six legions of demons.

Marbas who also goes by the name Barbas is a great president, and appears in the form of a lion. He will take human form when commanded to do so by the conjuror. He will reveal hidden or secret things. He has dominion over disease, but in curing and giving. He promotes wisdom in mechanical arts and handicrafts. He has control over thirty-six legions of other demons. He is not fond of the Guardian Angel Butator who is the angel of calculations. Butator serves in the third hour of the day and can correct any calculation which causes Marbas to be afraid of making a mistake in his mechanical arts. Marbas seems to also be

discouraged and vile towards The Angel Auphoniim who is considered the Angel of Wheels, Travel Safety, and Sports.

Ben Nez is A spirit who also goes by Rubiel/Ruhiel. Ben Nez exercises dominion over the wind. "He holds the south wind with his pinions lest the world be consumed." Ben Nez is referred to as a mountain and a demon, as well as an angel. This is common when dealing with spirits.

Behemoth is first seen as a spirit of the desert, possibly derives from the Egyptian words for "water buffalo". Some say he is the same as the Egyptian deity, Taueret. The term "Behemoth" in the Hebrew is the plural form of the very common "Behemah" referring to a beast of use or a dumb animal. It is being used here, however, as a single entity and a demon of great power.

Behemoth rules over the domain of gluttony, and is said to be butler and high cupbearer of the infernal regions. Some historians thought he was the Egyptian Pharaoh who persecuted the Israelites. He appears as a whale or elephant. He can disguise himself as a dog, elephant, fox, or wolf. He is a wonderful spirit to aid the practitioner in finding

unknown things, secrets of the unknown.
Sometimes he masquerades as the devil in Christian religions and seems to be interchangeable with Satan.

The name Satan is derived from a root meaning 'to oppose' or 'to be or to act as an adversary. Satan is identified with the Yetzer 214

Ha Ra, which is the 'evil impulse' in man. He is actually the Assyrian demon Shedim, which is actually the root word for spirit and to be violent. In the craft we do not call on Satan because this is not actually a demon or spirit but a concept.

A very useful demon to the practitioner is Dantalion. This demon rules thirty-six legions of demons. He appears usually with men's and women's faces, and holding a book in his right hand. He teaches arts and sciences. If ask, he can reveal anyone's secrets and also knows the thoughts of men and women, He has the power to change the thoughts of all at will. He can also cause love and is therefore a wonderful demon for love spells. To call this spirit, you will need to cast your circle as mentioned above. Be sure that you place roses around the circle because this demon loves the smell of roses. Once your circle is in place and the precautions are taken, stand in the middle of the circle and say:

“I conjure thee Dantalion, Heed my call and appear to do my bidding, I have need in the area where you are of great importance, Come to your master in the

name of the most powerful of spirits and the creator of all things”

Offer this demon the gifts of love and he will do your bidding in the areas of Love. But make sure that before you call on this demon of those of higher rank you have charged your magic sword. To do this, take your sword through the flame and say:

O Sword, by these Names, ABRAHACH, ABRACH, ABRACADABRA, YODHE VAU HE, that thou serve me for a strength and defense in all Magical Operations, against all mine Enemies, visible and invisible.

I conjure thee anew by the Holy and Indivisible Name of EL strong and wonderful; by the Name SHADDAI Almighty; and by these Names QADOSCH, QADOSCH, QADOSCH, ADONAI ELOHIM T'ZABAO'TH, EMANUEL, the First and the Last, Wisdom, Way, Life, Truth, Chief, Speech, Word, Splendor, Light, Sun, Fountain, Glory, the Stone of the Wise, Virtue, Shepherd, Priest, Messiach Immortal; by

these Names then, and by the other Names,
I conjure thee, O Sword, that thou shall
serve me for a Protection in all adversities.
Amen. 215

You should always use this conjuration to charge your sword and magical items when calling on the demons. When charging you're magical items ask for the aid of the Angel Cadmiel.

This angel is over the destiny of man. Cadmiel has to make sure that every man and woman accomplishes their own destiny. The favorite sentence of Cadmiel is: "If your soul goes to the right, don't go to the left." Cathetel is one of the eight Seraphim. He rules over agricultural products. In the cabala generally he is often invoked to increase or improve crops or to bring forth purified magical items through the earth. His is also called Asicat.

The Demon Eurynome is a superior demon and prince of death. He wears a fox skin to cover the sores covering his body, and he has huge teeth. A statue of him exists in the temple of Delphi depicting him having a black complexion, huge wolf-like teeth, and sitting on a vulture skin. It is said that he feeds on carrion and dead bodies. Eurynome was one of the female titans in Greek mythology. She and Ophion ruled over Olympus until they were dethroned by Saturn (Cronos) and

Rhea (Ops). At that time this goddess becomes a demon and an enemy of humanity. She should never be summoned and it should be noted that if this demon does appear during your ritual, you should banish her back to the unseen realms without delay. Use Leonard to exile her for he is indeed in charge of the rituals.

Leonard is often called "le Grand Negre" (The Black Man), Leonard is demon of the first order, grand master of the Sabbaths, chief of the subaltern demons, and inspector general of sorcery, black magic & witchcraft. For the true practitioner he is the guardian of their craft. From the waist up, Leonard has a goat's body with three horns on his head, a goat's beard, hair-like bristles, two ears like foxes, and inflamed eyes.

He also has a face on his butt, which witches kiss while holding a green candle to adore him. Leonard can take the form of a bloodhound, a bull, a black bird, or a tree trunk with a gloomy face. He is the original Baphomet. When he attends the Sabbath, he has the feet of a goose and sometimes that of a horse. Leonard's attitude is reserved and melancholic, but when he appears at witch and

practitioners assemblies, he is commanding & uses situations to his advantage.

Baphomet is the principal deity of the practitioner and is summonsed at all rituals and main Sabbaths. He is also known as Mahomet. Between his antlers he wears the Principle of Life and the 216

living spirit of this Principle is creation and the creator. The flame represents the knowledge of the Third degree. His hands represent the holy work, showing the esoteric sign both up and down, the mystery of the adepts. It explains the relation between Good and Evil, by pointing the white half moon (up) and the dark one down. The pentagram signifies the Microcosm, symbol of intelligence. Baphomet is not so much evil as it is indifferent to morality. It is the power that causes life to cyclically rise up from the mud, and to dissolve back into the mud when its will is spent. Calling the spirits for aide can be very risky. The demons or malevolent spirits sometimes do not wish to be servants of man as the creator has ordained. They may rebel or even worse, posses those that disturb them. Great care should be used. If all the proper protections and rituals are maintained, the seasoned practitioner should have no problem. For extra protection let's now move to colors and how they can be used in our everyday lives. 217

Chapter Eleven

Color Magic and Spells

As the practitioner evolves in knowledge, they are now seeing the world of the unseen and ways to use the knowledge to benefit all mankind. A wise practitioner has discovered that the combination of all that exists is used to obtain all that one seeks. We now will show you how colors can affect the outcome of your rituals and spells. We will also tell you of some of the very important rules of the craft in using color magic and rites to better your life. We will combine some more mystical beings with the use of colors, herbs, stones and the planets in the spells that follow. You are cautioned to use your knowledge wisely. The main rule of the craft is, "To Harm None."

Science has discovered that colors definitely affect the brains of us all. When you see a color, think of the way it makes you feel. Do you feel anger when you see red? Do you feel relaxed and calm around blue? What does colors do for you? Color plays an important role in the world in which we live. Color can sway thinking, change actions,

and cause reactions. It can irritate or soothe your eyes, raise your blood pressure or suppress your appetite.

In history, colors have played a significant role in all aspects of life. The ancient world of the Aztecs considered red dye more valuable than gold. The bright red colorant required the labor of hundreds of subjects combing the desert in search of its source, the female cochineal beetle. In Celtic religions, the Green man was the God of fertility. Later in the same century, Early Christians banned green because it had been used in pagan ceremonies.

Practitioners use color magic and the vibrations they bring to enhance the awareness of the cosmos and to bring a better vibration into their circles. An example of this is the use of Light or Sky Blue to bring calm into the ritual space. This allows for better concentration. Light Blue and White are staple candles for the circle and most ritual.

Each color has its own unique energy, wavelength, and frequency. By understanding the planetary forces surrounding a given color, you can gain insight into how to direct and focus specific

types of energy for your intended purposes. For example, Mars the God of War rules the color red. Iron is the metal for Mars. It is not by accident that Iron oxide (rust) is reddish in color. Blood is also red, and is associated with war. Iron is also present in the hemoglobin, and 218

is necessary for oxygen transport in the blood. So you see, there is a very strong connection on many different levels. Now let's look at some rituals for practice and purposes with the uses and combinations.

The Colors White and Yellow are ruled by Air Elements. Their direction is the east. The season of these two colors is the spring. White and Yellow are masculine colors associated with the sense smell. The main concepts of these colors are Intellect, Knowledge, Clarity, Discrimination, Mind, Speed, Sound, Intuition Imagination, and Dreams.

Yellow and White are used in spells and rituals dealing in the areas of Travel, new possibilities, instruction, finding lost items, some types of divination, and freedom. Elemental spirits that are associated with these colors are Sylphs or Sprites.

White candles are used for spiritual blessings, purity, healing, and rest. A white candle is a balance of all colors. Use it in rituals of cleansing, clairvoyance, healing, and truth seeking. All Rituals involving lunar energy involve a white candle. It also may be a substitute for any color candle. White

is under the Air Elements and the easterly directions.

Herbs associated with the color white are Rosemary, Woodruff, Mugwort, Marigold, Mustard, Rue, Sage, Tansy, St. Johns Wort, Betony, Burdock, Mint, Fern, Elder Flower, Heather, Lilac, Lily, Mint, Dahlia, and Gladiola. Stones that vibrate well with White are Opals, Clear Crystals, Mother-of-Pearl, Quartz, Moonstone, Pearl, Rose Quartz, and Abalone. This color of purity is the color of Doves, Snowy Owl, Chameleon, Cat, Lizard, Magpie, Whale, Swan, Bear, Hawk, Lizard, Cat, Dog, Whale, Wolf, and Praying Mantis.

During the first stages of initiation, the new practitioner will be given a white candle inscribed with his/her magical name. In doing so he agrees to the first laws of the craft.

Obey, Love and Honor the Gods, Goddess, and Priestess for They are the channels and the manifestations of the Source of all that is. Honor yourself, for this divine Force also lies within you. The Goddess is the Great Mother, the God is the Great Father, and we are Their children; Our Goddess is an embodiment of all sacred things.

Therefore, O Children of the Gods, try Them not, nor attempt to test Them, lest They show you that the Ways of the Craft are not to be belittled or mocked.

Let the Power of the Craft flow from you only in love or not at all. For it is better to be a husk of possession than to lash out in 219

vengeful power. Let our works become either the net which entangles and binds us or the web of light by which we are linked to the Gods.

Yellow Candles are used in rituals for devotion, prayer, money (gold), cheerfulness, and attraction. Yellow candles help us achieve creativity and unity. It will bring power of concentration and imagination to our ritual. Use yellow in rituals where you wish to gain another's confidence or persuade someone or in rituals that require solar energy. Yellow is considered a male color. Herbs that go well with this color are Laurel, Vine, Ash, Rue Marigold, St. Johns Wort, Centaury, Chamomile, Mistletoe, Saffron, Begonia, Geranium, Morning Glory, Snapdragon, Daffodil, Rosemary, Sunflower and Daisy.

Yellow is also the color for Gemini (May 22 June 21). Ruling planet is Mercury. Yellow is the color of this Zodiac sign representing communication and the power of the mind. In occult tradition Gemini is a symbol of the dualism which manifests from the transcendental Oneness and of magus who acts as a go-between carrying

messages between Middle Earth and the Other world.

Yellow also represents the second set of rules the craft. Always be proud to be of the Wicca, but never allow your pride to become vanity. Vain brings Pain. Keep your secrets and never reveal those things that can cause harm to yourself, your coven, or another who would misuse the knowledge entrusted to you. Be fair in your Judgments, Observe and listen, reserving your judgment, for until all is heard, fairness is essential to all humanity.

As like reaps like, Love shall also reap love. Ye are hereby ordered by the most high to love your brothers and sisters in the craft and do them no harm, once you have crawled from the pit, never go back by dishonoring your pacts and returning to your old ways.

When selecting stones which have good vibrations with yellow, you should select Topaz, Yellow Diamond, Pyrite Yellow Jacinth, Rutilated Quartz, Clear Quartz, Chrysolite, Goldstone, Citrine, some Tiger Eye, Carnelian and Amber.

Gold Candles foster understanding and attracts the powers of cosmic influences. It is

beneficial in rituals intended to bring about fast luck or money or in rituals needing solar energy. The Angel Bahram's color is Gold. Bahram is one of the Angels of Victory. You can summons him to assist you in battles and things unjust in your life. A prayer to this angel can produce a warm breeze. 220

When using Gold candles select herbs that vibrate and enhance this magical color. Herbs that go well with this color are Sunflower, Marigold, Buttercup, St. Johns Wort, Chamomile, Mistletoe, Saffron, Begonia, Geranium, Morning Glory, Snapdragon, Daffodil, Rosemary, and Daisy.

When thinking of the proper stones to use with Gold, think of Gold, Petrified Wood, Topaz, Yellow Diamond, Pyrite, Yellow Jacinth, Citrine, Clear Quartz, Chrysolite, Goldstone, Malachite, Tiger Eye, and Carnelian. Gold is also the third set of rules of the practitioner. These are rules of honor, loyalty, and trust.

Your teachers are the vessels of the Gods. Their duty is to plant the seeds of knowledge within the minds of their students, and they shall use their power for the good of the Craft and the protection of their family in the craft. Yet it is each student's duty to tend the seeds which are planted, and to make the final harvest. Those who misuse the power and trust of the teacher's position shall have to answer to the Lords of Karma, and adjust the balance accordingly.

The Circles of the Gods shall belong to all

Their children, and each circle shall be as a special family. Do naught against any of the Wicca, lest you do that thing against the Gods, and against yourself.

You must never speak falsehoods against the children of the Goddess, and you must hold no malice or evil thoughts towards others of the Wicca. If they be of a different sect or coven, honor them as if they were of yours. Greet them with open arms, open hearts, but closed lips. You must not do malice or place stones in the way of those who do not follow the way of the Wicca. You must make no unrighteous judgments of their ways, and you should aid them with an attitude of love when it is asked for. Yet ever should you keep the Counsel of the Elders, and reveal naught to others where our circles may be. Nor may you reveal our ways without the consent of the Priestess.

When you make a vow to the Lord or the Lady, or you swear an oath to another of the Wicca, then you keep that oath at all cost, for a covenant with the Gods, or with the Wicca, is your honor and your duty.

Pink Candles promotes romance and friendship. This is the standard color for rituals to

draw affections and love. It is considered a color of femininity, honor, service, brings friendly, and lively

conversation to the dinner table. Pink is selective to all Fire Elements whose direction is of the southern regions.

Herbs that are associated with the color Pink is Aztec Lily, Beans, Bishops Weed, Violets, Winter Cherry, Dropwort, Feverfew, Cotton Rose, Basil, Coriander, Crocus, Avocado, Ginseng, Kava-Kava, Ladies Mantle, Yarrow, Yerba Santa, Maidenhair, Allspice, and Pennyroyal.

Stones that have a vibration at the same wavelength of Pink are Pink Sapphire, Kunzite, Pink Tourmaline, Pink or Rose Quartz, Pink Diamonds, Pink Spinel, Pink Garnet, Ruby, Red Jasper, Emerald, Peridot, and Aventurine.

Pink is the color of Libra (September 24-October 23). Libra's Ruling planet is Venus. Libra's also vibrates well with sky blue. It symbolizes the heights attainable by romantic and spiritual love.

Red as we have seen before is for Health, passion, love, fertility, strength, courage, and will power. It increases magnetism in rituals and draws Aries and Scorpio energy into your midst. Red is the color ruled by Fire Elements, whose direction is the south. Red has a masculine gender and is favored by

the season of Summer. The sense this color is associated with is sight. Elementals that govern red are Firedrakes or Salamanders. Use red in rituals of Healing, purification, sex, breaking bad habits, destroying illness and disease. Red is the color of leadership. Herbs that correspond with Red are Sunflower, Nettles, Holy Thistle, Crowfoot, Hops, Wormwood, Chili Pepper, Chives, Spikenard, Onion, Cornflower, Rose, Mustard, Garlic, Rosemary, Dill, Hibiscus, Woodruff, Tobacco, Heather and Yew which is poisonous.

Red is the color for Aries (March 21 April 20) Ruling planet Mars. Shades of red, usually the darker shades of scarlet or crimson. Magically the planet Mars is the purifier and destroyer who wash aside the stagnant, the unwanted and the redundant so progress can be made. Alternatively, the planet of war also represents the creative principle and the unconscious urge for the human species to reproduce itself, for life and death are two aspects of the same energy.

Stones that have an affinity to Red are Rubies, Garnet, Bloodstone, Spinel, Red Tourmaline, Red Topaz, Agate, Rubelite, Lava, Rhodochrosite,

Quartz Crystals, Tigers Eye, Pyrite, Tektite, Diamond, and Red Jasper.

When the color is reddish-yellow it represents Virgo (August 24-September 23). The Ruling planet for Virgo is Mercury. It 222

represents the analytical abilities of the mind symbolized by the quest for scientific knowledge.

Orange shares some of the same traits of red but used for different rituals and spells. This color helps balance, aid attraction, and increase mental focus. Communications is the word with orange. This color is ruled by Mercury, divine messenger of the gods. Success spells and favorable decisions are best started here. If you're having trouble putting your thoughts together or in expressing your desires, burn an orange candle. Orange also allows you to link to another's mind. However, both people should be in agreement to this. Do not use this to invade another, for Mercury is a trickster and the trick might be played on you. Excellent for job hunting and success of any nature.

Orange is the color of Leo (July 23-August 23). Ruled by the Sun. Its other color is Gold. The sun represents the life force and is the visible symbol of the Cosmic Creator in the solar system. Herbs that are associated with Orange are the Fern, Lily of the Valley, Marjoram Savory, Valerian, Vervain, Alstonia, Buckwheat, Calamint, Snapdragon, Flax, Sienna, Wandering Jew, Mugwort,

Rue, Fenugreek, and Gardenia. Orange vibrates well with these stones, Moss Agate, Carnelian, Alexandrite, Orange Sapphire, Quartz, Orange Calcite, and Petrified Wood.

Green is a truly remarkable color. Here we have the Planetary Vibrations of Venus. The typical planet of Libra, but here Venus vibrates at an earthly level. Green can attract all that Venus rules on a material sense, treasures, antiques, and worldly possessions. This is best worked with an orange, Mercury candle so that obstacles are removed and the way to hidden treasure is opened.

Green is also a color of healing of physical disorders and diseases having to do with female problems. Use the Green candle in healing cancer. Use for candle magic spells and general rituals involving abundance, fertility, good fortune, generosity, money, wealth, success, renewal, marriage and balance.

Green is the color for Taurus (April 21-May 21). The ruling planet of Taurus is Venus. In magical rituals the Venus energy represents the spiritual desire to unite the opposites and balance the dual forces of male and female. This union was

known to the medieval alchemists as "the sacred marriage" and is symbolized in magic and Wicca by the ritual metaphor of the sword in the chalice. Green is the elemental charge of the Gnomes and of the northern direction. Emerald Green is Important component in Venus related 223

rituals. It attracts love, social delights, and fertility. Dark Green is the Color of ambition, greed, and jealousy and counteracts these influences in a ritual. The Green candle is used mostly in rituals of prosperity. Here is a simple spell you can use to gain more money and prosperity in your life.

You will need one green candle, a candle holder made of stone, Patchouli Oil, Allspice, and a lighter. This spell should be performed during the waxing moon, from New to Full. Anoint your candle with Patchouli Oil and engrave your name on it. Sprinkle the allspice around you in a circle. Close your eyes and breathe slowly, deeply and rhythmically until you feel completely relaxed. Imagine yourself surrounded by white light, enclosed in a bright crystal of energy and protected from harm. Call on the Goddess and your guardians to assist you. Begin to visualize money flowing into your life. In your mind's eye see dollar bills or silver dollars or whatever signifies money to you being blown towards you from above and from all directions. Try to both mentally picture this as clearly as you can and feel it emotionally. Now pick up the candle and hold it tightly in your hands until

you feel your pulse throbbing beneath your fingers. Your energy and the prosperous energies of the Universe symbolized by the green candle are merging together. You are becoming a prosperity magnet. You can also use a Green lodestone to your spell to draw money to you or to make a powerful amulet to carry.

Affirm your desire in a clear and concise voice. For example: "Money streams continuously into my life." It's also wise to add a line like "with harm towards none." Continue visualizing and chanting as you place the candle in the holder and light it. Cup your hands around the flame, feeling the warmth and energy. Put the candle in a safe place and let it burn down naturally.

To strengthen this spell you can make you a money draw candle. Add powdered Thyme, powdered Clover, and powdered Bayberry to a green candle. Mix patchouli as you mold the candle and you have a powerful money candle.

When the shade of Green is a sea green, it becomes the color for Pisces (February 20-March 20). Ruling planet for Pisces is Neptune. indigo is another shade for Pisces. Indigo works well because

it is connected with the planetary energy of Jupiter. It has ruler ship over inspiration, matters connected with the sea and entertainment, especially the movie industry. 224

Practitioners should use Green on Fridays for love and friendship. When used on Wednesday's, your spell should concern business transactions. Use Green on Thursday the day of Jupiter for Luck and prosperity. Herbs that correspond with the color Green are Birch, Catnip, Blackberry Coltsfoot, Foxglove, Thyme, Yarrow, Feverfew, Burdock, Pennyroyal, Plantain, Briar, Verbena, Elder, Basil, Cedar wood, Sage, Dill, Clove and Mugwort.

Stones that vibrate with Green are Emerald, Peridot, Jade, Malachite Coral, Green Tourmaline, Aventurine, Green Quartz, Gold, Silver, Rock Crystal Onyx, and Azurite.

Blue is the color of Peace. Blue is complementary to the element Water and the Western direction. Blue is Used for spells and general rituals involving peace, harmony, protection, and healing where there are fevers concerned. Burn blue candles to reunite friendships, house blessing for a new home, and neutralizing acts of magic. It assists you to break bad habits, including all over indulgences, be they food, alcohol or drugs. It is the color that calms the nerves and will calm the atmosphere of a home where there is calamity or

arguments. Herbs that vibrate and work well with Blue are Carnation, Honeysuckle, Orange Heather, Cypress, Hazel, Oak Moss, Mallow, Aloe Vera Buttercup (communication), Daffodil and Baby's Breath.

Light Blue is the color of communications, calmness, and peace. Candles of Light Blue are generally burnt when meditating and you need to decrease tension. It is placed on altars to bring a calming to your incantation. Some spirits that are called do not wish to be present and this will add a calming effect. Light Blue is used in spells on Mondays for peace and patience. You can use it on a Wednesday for friendships, creativity, and dreams. Stones that vibrate well with blue are Azurite, Turquoise, Coral, Blue Opal, Tanzanite, Sapphire, Chrysacola, Hematite, Sodalite, Blue Laced Agate, Lapis Lazuli, Aquamarine and Sapphire.

Royal Blue candles should be burned on Thursday for spells of honor and happiness. Dark Blues burnt on Saturdays are good for communications.

Metallic Blue is for the color of Cancer (June 22-July 22). Cancer's Ruling planet is the moon.

Another prominent color of Cancer is silver. It is the realm of the unconscious, the hidden side of the personality and psychic forces. Other shades of blue are Indigo or turquoise. 225

The Color of indigo, stops situations or people. Use in rituals that require a deep meditation state or in rituals that demands Saturn energy. Use for candle spells and general rituals involving meditation, to neutralize another's spells, stop gossip, lies, or undesirable competition and to balance out Karma. Blue is the color of the third set of rules of the practitioner. Rules of calmness and non-violence.

Never shall you use the Craft to cause harm to another without first seeking the wisdom of the goddess and the elders of the craft, for this become misuse of the Power. To cause pain and death of another through the Craft, without just cause, shall require pain and death of the self in sacrifice.

Never betray any those who trust you. The order of the Gods shall you keep, You must not say "I believe" when in truth you doubt, nor shall you claim to obey the Lord and Lady's word when you never enter into their presence. You must not profess with your lips that which does not dwell in your heart.

In any disputes between the children of the Goddess, no one may invoke any laws but those of

the Craft, or any tribunal but that of the Priestess, Priest, and Elders. All tribunals will be the rulings of our laws and not the laws of man. Our Laws were ordained by the creator in the beginning of time and are more powerful than the laws of man. Honor them always and when they conflict with the laws of man, our laws shall by birthright be the ruling ones.

Your tools of the craft are channels to that which is most precious and pure within you. Cheapen them not by haggling over their price when you acquire them. Better to fashion them yourself or ask assistance of a senior member.

You shall never take from any human, animal, or elemental that which is not yours: if you steal from another, you shall have to sacrifice something dearer to you in order to maintain the balance.

The color for Scorpio (October 24-November 22) is a silver gray. Ruling planet of this astrological sign is Pluto. Dark red serves Scorpio also. The energy of the Plutonian sphere is connected with Mars and represents death and regeneration. It has ruler ship over the underworld and the spirits of the departed.

To combine the knowledge of Scorpio, guardian Angel Barchiel presides over the sun signs of Scorpio and Pisces and is Angel of February. Those who were born under these signs can pray to Barchiel for Special protection and bright blessings. We can all pray to this illumined one to inspire us to become more compassionate and to help us develop inner strength and the will to 226

heal ourselves and others. This angel also grants emotional depth and awareness. Burn candles for Scorpio or Pisces for a strengthened effect.

Magenta has a very high vibration frequency that tends to work fast so it is usually burned with other candles. Uses for magenta candle usually involve quick changes, spiritual healing, and exorcism. Magenta is the color of super power. It bestows the ability to penetrate all planes, work quickly in receiving your desires, and spiritual healing. The negative vibrations of magenta are such that when dealing with relationships, fidelity will always be at issue.

Purple candles are used for workings of honor and recognition in acquiring wealth and respect of others. This color is ruled by Jupiter. Good for winning in the court room, law suits, and legal matters. All psychic work attaining wisdom through psychic visions in business and attracting new business clients. Good for putting your employer in a jovial mood before you hit him/her for a raise. This is a color related to power and will work well with other colors, especially orange, green and yellow. For legal cases use brown or orange with

purple. This royal color is generally used in rituals involving success, idealism, higher psychic ability, wisdom, progress, protection, honors, spirit contact, break bad luck cycles, and driving away evil. Purple is the color of the spirit (Akasha) and it is neither a male or female color but the color of the High Magician. Herbs and plants that work well with this color are Mimosa, Wisteria, Mugwort Hazel, Eyebright, Rowan, Elder, Rue, Shamrock, Clover, Oak, Dandelion, Betony, Meadowsweet, Begonia, Cactus, Dahlia, Iris, and Violets.

Purple is the for Sagittarius (November 23-December 21). The ruling planet is Jupiter. The other color that represents this astrological sign is royal blue. It is an expansive planetary energy connected with the world of finance and social matters. Wednesday is the best day for burning purple candles. Make a psychic candle to increase your awareness on a Wednesday by adding powdered Anise Seed to a purple or white candle. To combine stones with this color, use Amethyst, Sapphire, Lapis Lazuli, Beryl, Clear Quartz, and all Opals.

Brown is the color of the earth. This color

works well on the physical rituals and the physical planes. It is a combination of red and green. Mars and Venus, when blended together, neutralize. So brown is often used to separate or neutralize. Brown is also a color used for grounding and stabilizing. This color falls under the ruler ship of 227

Pluto, the Lord of Outer Spaces and the Dead. Use for spells involving concentration, balance, ESP, intuition, study, justice, and separation. Herbs and Plants for Brown are Corn, Tansy, Ginseng, Willow, Lily, Ivy, Grains, Oats, Mushrooms, Orange Tree, Almond, Begonia, and Daisies.

Brown is the color of the guardian angel Cathetel. This guardian angel of the garden increases the growth and yield of vegetables and fruits. Cathetel inspires the human race to love and appreciate all of the beings of nature. When we grow in respect and reverence for nature we can attain harmony with our own natures as well. Stones used for this color and this guardian angel is Crystal, Smokey Quartz, Amber, Tiger Eye, Sandstone, Granite, Pumice, and Turquoise.

Black is the opposite of White. Its attribute is Saturn the teacher and lover of knowledge. Here we must be very careful in selecting this color. Saturn is used for retribution when we have been wronged, thus you may feel that you should punish the person immediately with a Hex and let them suffer. This is a temptation that must be avoided. Remember the Wicca Rede states that we should harm none. So

you learn not to misuse the power of magic and instead of revenge, you call for Justice. Black is used for spells and rituals involving conflict, protection from retribution, power including will power, strength, revenge, reversing spells, uncrossing, binding negative forces, protection, releasing, and repel dark magic in the form of Banishing.

Black is the color of Capricorn (December 22 to January 20), whose ruling planet is Saturn. It rules karma, fate and destiny, the law, old age and property matters. Black's day is Saturday with the Element of Air. The herbs and plants that work well with the vibrations of Black are The Oak, Yew, Beech, Elm, Comfrey, Holly, Ivy, Horsetail, Reeds, Solomon's Seal, Mullein, Cedar, Clove, Cypress, Rue, Betony, Elder, Fern, Yarrow, Cayenne, Dragons Blood, Mandrake, and Flax. Several of these are poison and should be used with care.

Stones that vibrate well with the color Black are Onyx, Jet, Obsidian, Black Quartz, Black Star Sapphire, Agate, Tektite, Pyrite, Diamond, Moonstone, Galena, and Pumice.

Silver and Gray by tradition this color is of Stability and Neutrality. It is Used to remove evil

influences or to buffer any existing unwanted vibrations. It is used in fertility, success, good luck, prosperity, money, rejuvenation and ambition rituals. Sliver, like its 228

twin brother without the luster, Gray is used to counteract greed and jealousy. Silver represents the northern quarter of a circle and Earth. Silver helps the development of psychic abilities, ESP. Consecration rituals, meditation, divination, exorcism and spells that involve healing, clairvoyance, truth, peace, spiritual strength and lunar energy. Silver is the color of the moon and the goddess.

A combination of the colors will always bring various results. Be creative and you will get the best results. Now that you have discovered the stones, color, demons and angels as well as herbs, let's look at rituals and Sabbaths. Just like all other sects, even Pagans have their own special holidays. What you might discover is that the Pagan holy days came first. 229

Chapter Twelve

Sabbaths and Special Holidays of The Practitioner

The word Sabbath is a strange and curious word. The concept of "week" was often represented in both Hebrew and Greek by the word "Sabbath" which was the most distinctive feature of the week, and which is also, in Hebrew, similar to the word for "seven". Thus the term "Sabbaton" can mean "week", and is used mostly as "fast twice in the week". When used by Christians, it means the day of rest, in which God rested when he had finished his creation. Needless to say Gods creation and renewing is constant. This Omnipotent being would not need rest.

It is strange there has never been a set Sabbath in the Christian nation. Christians state its Sunday, while Moslems have their Sabbath on Fridays. In the Jewish Community the Sabbath falls on Saturday and this has fallen on most Catholic sects. The original word seems to have been Sabbat. This now is defined as a gathering of witches. The notion of Sabbaths already existed in Assyria, and it

came with the Persian colonists from the east into Yehud. Sabbaths were special days when work was forbidden. They were related to the lunar cycle. It seems that the notion of Sabbath as a special festival has come through the dualist tradition and been preserved in the crafts tradition.

When a practitioner speaks of a Sabbath, they are speaking not of Saturday or Sunday, but one of the four special seasonal changes. The Sabbat of the practitioner is not ruled by day, but by the seasons and the moon or day of the deities. Christians so feared these special meetings that the practitioner was accused of riding brooms, making pacts with the devil, and many other nonsensical things that would scare a backward townsfolk.

The main Sabbaths of the practitioners start of February 1st with Imbolc and end with Yule on December 21st each year. The dates can vary because the practitioner follows the rise of the moon and planets. Names for the festivals are very old and seeped in traditions that are to this day still unknown. The Sabbaths are, Imbolc (February 1st) followed by Ostara on the 21st of March. Then comes Beltaine on May 1st and then Litha (June

21st).Lughnasahdh comes on August 1st followed by the last two which are Mabon (September 21st) and Samhain(October 31st). 230

Imbolc is the first Sabbath of the Practitioner so we shall begin our journey there. Imbolc, celebrated by most Practitioners February 2nd. It is the celebration of the coming of spring and banishment of winter. This is the celebration of the three-fold Goddess: Maid, Mother and Crone. She has passed through her phase as the crone, hag or wise one, and is a maiden once more. This Sabbat is ruled by the goddess. You must research your tradition and you will find that the festivals are the same, the goddesses are names different. We shall follow a Wiccan path.

Imbolc is celebrated by most Practitioners around February 2nd and celebrates the first stirrings of the coming of spring and the banishment of winter. It is a celebration of the three-fold Goddess: Maid, Mother and Crone. She has passed through her phase as the crone, hag or wise one, and is a maiden again; this festival celebrates the Goddess restoring her virginity each year in a ritual bath. Imbolc, translated from Gaelic as "in the belly" and "ewe's milk" represents the quickening of light and life and we celebrate the return of life to the earth after the barren darkness

of winter.

Imbolc is ruled by the goddess of spring, known as Brigit or Brigantia in Ireland, and Bride in Scotland. In is the time when, the god of the earth Dagda, the “good god,” had three daughters, who were all named Brigit. The first Brigit was the goddess of poetry, the second was the goddess of metal craft, and the third was the goddess of fire and healing. All three are really aspects of one triple goddess who was associated with the Sun and with fire. On this day Brigit uses her flame to rekindle the fire in the earth and assure that plants would have the heat that they need to break through the earth and begin to grow. To commemorate this wonderful event, women practitioners should dress as Brigit and bless the fires in the households by making a Bridget cross or simply reciting an incantation of protection for the coming year.

On this day, Brigit’s snake would come out of its mound, and the snake’s behavior would determine how long the remaining frost will last. This is the most likely origin of Groundhog Day. In order to convert the practitioners of early times, Brigit became a saint associated with the Virgin

Mary. Imbolc became the Christian Candlemas, the Feast of the Purification of the Blessed Virgin Mary, which is celebrated by lighting candles.

For this Holy Sabbat, Make a talisman of protection, so your home is protected all year. Brigit's cross is a talisman made of woven grape vines that form a cross with a woven square in the center and 231

four equal arms extending out from the center. This design gives the cross a sense of rotation that evokes the wheel of the year. Brigit's cross should be made only on this day. Later it can be used for healing. This Sabbath is the longest standing festival, with the exception of Samhain.

The fires of Brigit were tended by nineteen priestesses throughout recorded history at Kildare, Ireland. Today these same sacred fires are tended by nineteen nuns. In the spirit of Brigit's fire, light white, red, or yellow candles to celebrate the return of the light at this time of year. It is very essential that you start your year off right as a practitioner by honoring the Holidays that have made the Practitioners life special and given thanks to the old ways and the Creator as he has given us so much.

Although it is still in the dark part of the year, the days grow perceptibly longer and it is a time to dust off our resolutions, get back in touch with our potentialities and look outwards. It is a true time of renewal of vows to High Priestess and priest as well as self. Lavender incense is good for this season. To make a special Imbolc Incense you can do the following.

Take 3 parts Frankincense, 2 parts dragons Blood, 1 part sandalwood, 1 part cinnamon, 1 part sage and a few drops of red wine(sweet preferred). Crush all ingredients into a fine powder and mix into paste with the wine. Allow to dry into shapes that are special to you.

Burn these shapes on charcoal and be careful not to add too much red wine. You should light your incense before casting your circle or doing any other invocations.

Following Imbolc comes Ostara. This is the rite of the Spring Equinox, marking the equal point between the lengths of day and night. Ostara is a time of optimism for new life bursting forth and the beginning of the age of light in the year wheel.

Eostre's festival is held on the first full moon on or next after the vernal equinox (March 21st), so this fertility goddess lends her festival, her symbols and her name to the Christian celebration of the Resurrection. The festival is also called Eostre, after the Goddess of fertility, known as Eostre, Eastre and Ostara who was connected with eggs (a symbol of rebirth) and hares.

To the Druids it is called Alban Eilir or

Alban Eiler (Light of the Earth) in reference to the Sun God. The name Ostara actually originated as a Germanic goddess of spring and fertility, and the name of her Anglo-Saxon equivalent is Eostre, from whose name 232

Easter is derived. Though it is said that she was sometimes depicted with a hare's head, no authentic animal-headed deities appear in Germanic or Celtic cult objects. In addition, the egg represents the Cosmic Egg of Creation and the hare is symbolic of the moon

This is a time when we celebrate the stirring of the reproductive powers of nature and is a time of new life and fertility. To the perceptive practitioner, this is also the time of year that we will see a large growth in population.

Ostara is a time of balance and this is an ideal opportunity to reflect on how our male and female energies balance within us, what plans we have for the future at this time of growth and fertility and how we can develop ourselves to become better people on the planet.

To prepare for this ritual, burn incense (orange bergamot, lavender, lily, mint or sage works well). Use your witches broom, a handheld fan or large feather to disperse it as you walk, clearing the space for your circle and sanctifying the area. If you are musically inclined or have a member of your group that is, use Flute music to call the spirits of

spring. You can also use a musical media with Instrumental Flute Music.

Cover the altar with a yellow cloth, honoring the Air element and Eostre. Prepare a bowl of fragrant petals from early blossoming flowers and small feathers. Leave these on one corner of the altar for later use. On the other end of the altar place a string of tiny bells. Light six pale green candles for divine representations of new plant growth.

Pick up the bowl of flower petals and feathers, and begin walking the circle in a clockwise direction. Sprinkling them along the perimeter. Stop at each compass point. Light the appropriate scented stick of incense and candle at each quarter point as you invoke that power of the guardians. The First point belongs to the East are the guardian Sylphs and Spirits of the Winds. Here you should say,

I call to you. Come to this place with the ancient song of air on your wings”.

Continue to the second quarter and invoke the Southern guardians, Salamanders and Spirits of Fire, by saying, “I call to you. Come to this place to warm the winds of

spring and give life to the magic”. Now face the western quarter and call on the guardians of the west, the Undines and Spirits of Water, “I call to you. Come to this place with salty sea air that motivates the 233

tides of inspiration”. Now go to your northern quarter and call on the guardians of the north, the Gnomes and Spirits of the Earth, “I call to you. Come to this place with the living magic that abides in each grain of soil, and within my soul”.

With each quarter give them the time and reverence which they deserve. Now return to the center and invoke the guardian Angels and the great Ones to witness and sanctify your ritual act and deeds.

“I call to you. Come to this place with creation's power. Bind the elements into one and bear the magic safely to its mark”.

Now your ritual circle is cast, you may proceed to keep your ritual agenda and do all practitioners spells, charms and affirmations. While doing so, always give notice and reverence to the spring and the new births that re taking place. This may also be a time when others of the craft can join for reaffirmation of rites and vows. No items of controversy can be addressed at this ritual. Because one of the principal features of this holy day is restoring balance, make yourself a special charm to

represent symmetry out of opposites.

Gather together a white stone and a black stone, a feather for the sky and some soil for the Earth, a two-toned cloth, and a piece of string. At sunset, place the items in the center of the cloth and tie them with the string. As you do so, repeat this incantation three times, each time making a knot to bind the magic: "Here I am, existing between Earth and sky, moon and sun, now the magic has begun. I call and charm this amulet to balance and bring to me all that is blessed, so mote it be" Carry this anytime you feel a portion of your life getting out of balance. Another activity entails taking pieces of grain and rubbing them on every doorway and window of your home.

According to Peruvian custom, this protects the inhabitants from misfortune. Or you can tie wishes in the form of ribbons loosely to a tree so the winds can loose them and release the magic. This is an excellent day to perform any Blessing ways, Birth Rites, and children's rituals too.

After all business is taken care of, before dismissing the ritual, offer your members a libation of Vodka with a twist of lemon. Vodka 234

is equal to fire and the lemon represents the yellow disk of the sun. You can also offer the traditional wine, Ostara Coltfoot's Wine.

To make this pleasant brew you will need, five pints of flowers, 2 lb. Sugar, One gallon water, and two lemons and some yeast.

Pour three pints of boiling water over the flowers and squash with a spoon, cover them and let stand for twenty four hours in a warm place. Strain and add the lemon juice. Start the yeast, meanwhile boil the sugar in 3 pints of water and add to the flower juice. Cool to 20°C and add the yeast. Cover and leave for 3 days and transfer to a pitcher or stone crock. Make up to 1 gallon with the remaining water. Fit an airlock. You can make more for future Sabbath's or give as gifts to make for a joyous spring tonic.

When closing the circle, the ritual focuses on the Air element, it will be the last one thanked and invited to leave, if it wishes to do so, before the Spirit. So closing begins in the North. Say in a humble and thankful voice:

“I thank you Gnomes, for your fruitful energy. Carry peace and renewal from this

place through the roots of trees, and on every beast". Proceed to the West and say, "I thank Undines, you for your flowing energy. Carry peace and renewal from this place in every drop of rain, and on every wave that caresses the shores". Then to the South and say "Sweet and Blessed are the Salamanders, Spirits of Fire, I thank you for your motivating energy. Carry peace and renewal from this place in every ray of sunshine that touches Earth". Now face the east at the quarter of the East and say, "Spirits of Air, gracious Sylphs, I thank you for your billowing energy. Carry peace and renewal from this place in every wind and breeze, in the sound of bells, and on the wings of birds'. Now enter the center of your circle and thank the guardian angels and spirits by saying, "Guardians and Great One, I thank you for your blessed energy. Carry renewal from this place with every star wished upon. Release in me my inner child, loose any bondage, and grant my spirit the wings of peace. So

Mote It Be”.

When the circle is closed, take the bells that have been charged by your ritual to a window of your house. Hang them where 235

their gentle music announces the winds of change and the never-ending turning of the Wheel of life.

The next festival Sabbat on the wheel of the year is the Sabbat known as Beltane. This special season usually begins around April 30th and May 1st, give or take a day.

The word, Beltane translated means "fire of Bel" or "bright fire" the "bale-fire". The Anglo-Saxon word would be bael; Lithuanian baltas (white)) Bel (Bel, Bile, Beli, Belinus, Belenos) is the known as the bright and shining one, a Celtic Sun God. Beli is the father, protector, and the husband of the Mother Goddess.

Young men and women wandered into the woods before daybreak of May Day morning with garlands of flowers. They arrive at the place of the Maypole and couple in fertility rites. In Pre-Christian societies, thoughts on human sexuality and fertility were not bound up in guilt and sin. Life was not an exercise but rather a joyful dance, rich in all beauty it can afford. The Maypole dance is still celebrated in many European countries to this day.

The Maypole dance as an important aspect of

encouraging the return of fertility to the earth. The pole being phallic in symbolism is the connector of the three worlds. Dancing the Maypole during Beltane is magical experience as it is a conduit of energy, connecting all three worlds at a time when these gateways are more easily penetrable. The action of people dancing around the maypole and holding the brightly colored ribbons raises energy, which is sent down into the earth's womb, bringing about Her full awakening and fruitfulness. This is also the time of hand fasting and unions.

May, however, according to old folklore is not a favorable time for marriages in the legal and permanent sense. There is reference after reference in the old books of this belief, and according to my Irish grandmother, May is not the month to marry, woe is to have by those who do. I can understand the premise of this folklore, May is the Goddess and God's hand fasting month, and all honors would be Hers and His.

The central color of Beltane is green, red, yellow, Blues, and purples. It is customary to bake a colorful fruit and spiced filled bread for Beltane. If possible, celebrate Beltane in a forest or near a living

tree. If this is impossible, bring a small tree within the circle, preferably potted; it can be of any type. Create small tokens in honor of the wedding of the Goddess and God to hang upon the tree. These tokens can be bags filled with fragrant Flowers, strings of 236

beads, carvings of the god and goddess. You should arrange your altar and light your candles of appropriate color. This time you will need to cast a circle of stones. When this is done Invoke the God and Goddess. Stand before the altar and say, with wand upraised and say in a joyful voice:

O Great Mother Goddess, Queen of the night, Goddess of the Moon and of the Earth; O Great and Powerful Father God, King of the day, he who rules the sun and of the forest, I celebrate Your union and all nature rejoices Accept my gift with perfect love and trust, Mother Goddess and Father God, in honor of Your union I give this charm.

From Your mating shall spring forth life anew; and the winds will blow pure and sweet as the earth is replenished. O Ancient Ones Of Power, I celebrate with You.

The next festival we should explore is Litha or Midsummer. The Festival of the Summer Solstice or Litha occurs when the Sun enters zero degrees of Cancer (In June, around the 21st and 23rd. We have discussed this festival in prior chapters. It is the

longest day of the year and the shortest night. The Druids called it Alban Heruin. In some traditions the sacred marriage of the Goddess and God is celebrated. In Greece, Rhea, the Mountain Mother of Crete, breathed out all creation. In China, the Chinese Goddess of Light, Li in being honored. Litha is one of the Sabbaths that the faithful practitioner will attend or honor. Litha is one of the Lesser Wiccan Sabbaths and is usually celebrated on June 21st, but varies somewhat from the 20th to the 23rd, dependant upon the Earth's rotation around the Sun. Symbols to represent the Litha Sabbath are fire, the Sun, blades, mistletoe, oak trees, balefires, Sun wheels and faeries.

Altar decorations should include summertime flowers especially sunflowers. Love amulets, seashells, aromatic potpourri and summer fruits are also special for the alter at this festival. If you have made Sun wheels at Imbolc, you should now display them prominently. Hang them from the ceiling or place them on trees in your yard. You may also want to decorate them with yellow and gold ribbons and summer herbs. 237

Deities associated with Litha include all Father Gods and Mother Goddesses. All Goddesses who are over childbirth and Sun Deities are present in this time. Particular emphasis might be placed on the Goddesses Aphrodite, Astarte, Freya, Hathor, Ishtar, Athena, Artemis, Venus Dana, Kali, Isis, Juno, Apollo, Dagda, Gwydion, Helios, Llew, Oak/Holly King, Lugh, Ra, Sol, Zeus, Prometheus, Ares, and Thor. Depending on your tradition any other Goddesses who preside over love, passion and beauty. We will discuss this and the other rituals later in the book.

Litha is good time to gather the herb Yarrow. This herb is also known as Seven Year's Love, Milfoil, and Woundwort. Use yarrow for Courage, Love, Psychic Powers, and Exorcism. Large patches of yarrow growing in a field indicate a very grounded energy spot. Yarrow is used to exorcise evil and negativity from a person, place or thing. A bunch of dried yarrow hung over the bed or yarrow used in wedding decorations ensures a love lasting at least seven years. It should always be collected during that one time of year and stored in a yellow or amber container.

At mid-summer, the Sun God has reached the moment of his greatest strength. Seated on his greenwood throne, he is also lord of the forests, and his face is seen in church architecture peering from countless architectural masks. The Christian religion converted this day of Jack-in-the-Green to the Feast of St. John the Baptist, often portraying him in rustic attire, sometimes with horns and cloven feet like the Greek Demi-God Pan.

Many legends explain this phenomena as the darkness triumphing over the light. The darker brother kills the lighter brother in these legends, and the brother who dies resides in the underworld until it is time for him to return and slay his brother again, to rule for the next six months. The stories of Lugh and Goronwy, and the Oak King and the Holly King are but two of these legends

This is a very good time to perform blessings and protection spells for your pets or other animals. You may want to choose to include your pet with you when you cast your Circle at this Sabbat. Nurturing and love is key actions related to Midsummer (Litha). Ritual actions for Litha might include placing a flower-ringed cauldron upon your

altar, plunging of the sword (or Athame) into the cauldron for purification and rededication. It is also the time to gather and dry herbs. Leap the bonfire if you are outside for purification and renewed energy. Ritually, use mirrors to capture the light of the Sun or the flames of the fire. 238

Some things that are considered taboo on this holiday are giving away fire, sleeping away from home, and neglecting animals. Doing these things on this special and holy day will cause much misfortune in the coming months.

Things that are associated with this Sabbath are Fire, the Sun, blades, mistletoe, oak trees, balefires, Sun wheels, summertime flowers (especially sunflowers), summer fruits, seashells and faeries. If you made Sun wheels at Imbolc, display them now prominently, hanging from the ceiling or on trees in your yard. You may want to decorate them with yellow and gold ribbons and summer herbs.

Colors associated with the Summer Solstice include white, red, maize yellow or golden yellow, green, blue and tan. Altar candles could be either a combination of blue, green, and yellow and can include red and gold.

Stones to use during Litha include all green gemstones, especially emerald and jade. Other that can be used depending on your scheduled rites can be tiger's eye, lapus lazuli, and diamonds.

Animals associated with this Sabbat include

robins, wrens, all Summer birds, horses, and cattle. Mythical creatures include satyrs, faeries, firebirds, dragons, and thunderbirds. Have special totems dedicated to these animals present.

For your Sabbat feast, make sure there are fresh vegetables of all kinds and fresh fruits such as lemons and oranges. Bake some pumpernickel bread to eat with Summer squash and any yellow or orange colored foods. Traditional drinks are ale, mead, and fresh fruit juice of any kind.

Make your special Fruit salad Love Spell during this time. To do so follow this recipe.

In a Large glass bowl add the following:
1 cup Mango 1/2 cup Pine Nuts 1 cup fresh
Pineapple 1 cup Apple 1 cup Peaches 2 or 3 Bananas
1 small jar Red Cherries 1/2 cup Coconut

As you mix and prepare the fruit to bite size say the following chant:

Fruit of mango, Nuts of pine, Grant my
wish, that I seek and find. Fruit of apple, fruit
of peach, Bring true love within my reach.

Fruit of banana, fruit of cherry, Let this love last and not tarry. As I work my magic spell, Warmly in his (her) heart I shall dwell. I now invoke the Law of 'Three: This is my will, so mote it be.

Mix the fruits and place your hands on either side of the bowl, now with loving energy, focus your wishes into the salad. Then serve the salad to all that are present, especially to that person who you wish to catch in your love spell.

You may also want to make your own Incense to burn at Midsummer and on special ritual occasions. To make a powerful Midsummer incense you will need to mix the following; 2 parts Sandalwood, 1 part Mugwort, 1 part Chamomile, 1 part Gardenia petals, a few drops Rose oil, a few drops Lavender oil, and a few drops Yarrow oil. Mix this in your cauldron and warm slightly. After it is all mixed and a little gooey, place in small shapes and balls to burn on your alter.

On Midsummer Night, elves, sprites, and fairies are present in great numbers. Litha is considered one of the best times to perform magical rituals of all kinds, for it is considered a time of

great magical power. A wreath of yellow feathers and flowers should be made at this time for prosperity and red wreaths for sexuality. These should be tied together with ivy.

Another way to express the cycle of the Earth's fertility that has persisted from early pagan to modern times is the myth of the Oak King and the Holly King, gods respectively of the waxing and waning year. The Oak King rules from Midwinter to Midsummer, the period of fertility, expansion and growth, and the Holly King reigns from Midsummer to Midwinter, the period of harvest, withdrawal and wisdom. They are the light and dark twins, each being the others alternate self, thus being one. Each represents a necessary phase in the natural rhythm of the wheel of life. At the two changeover points, they symbolically meet in combat. The incoming twin, the Oak King at Midwinter, the Holly King at Midsummer "slays" the outgoing one. But the defeated twin is not considered dead. He has merely withdrawn during the six months of his brother's rule.

The next Sabbat we will explore is Lammas or Lughnassadh. This religious ceremony marks the

marks the end of summer and the 240

beginning of fall. The days now shorter and the temperatures are mixed and old man winter is showing its face at every corner.

Lammas is of course a cross-quarter day, one of the four High Holidays or Greater Sabbats of the practitioner, occurring one quarter of a year after Beltane. The true Lammas date is when the stars line at fifteen degrees Leo, which occurs between August first and August sixth. Tradition has set August First as the day Lammas is typically celebrated. The celebration would begin on sundown of the previous evening, July 31st, since the Celts reckon their days from sundown to sundown.

However, English Practitioner often refers to the astrological date of Aug 6th as Old Lammas. This date has long been considered a 'power point' of the Zodiac, and is symbolized by the Lion, one of the 'tetramorph' figures found on the Tarot cards, the World and the Wheel of Fortune. This festival is usually held August first or second. It is also called the rite of Harvest Home, Lughnassadh, August Eve, Lammastide, Ceresalia (named for the Roman grain goddess Ceres), First Fruits, Festival

of Green Corn (Native American), Feast of Cardenas, Cornucopia (Strega), Thingtide and Elembiuos.

Lammas is an Anglo-Saxon word meaning "loaf mass." Lughnassadh is named for the Irish sun god Lugh (pronounced Loo), and variant spellings are Lughnasadh, Lughnasad, Lughnassad, Lughnasa and Lunasa

Lammas is when the powerful gods of the grain harvests are honored. Lughnasadh is named for Lugh, the Celtic deity who presides over the arts and sciences.. According to Celtic traditions, Lugh decreed that a commemorative feast be held each year at the beginning of the harvest season to honor his foster mother, Tailtiu. Tailtiu is the royal Lady of the Fir Bolg. After the defeat of her people by the Tuatha De Danann, she was obliged by them to clear a vast forest for the purpose of planting grain. She died in the attempt. The legend states that she was buried beneath a great mound named for her, at the spot where the first feast of Lughnasadh was held in Ireland, the hill of Tailte.

It would appear, this festival has two aspects. First, it is one of the Celtic fire festivals, honoring

the Celtic culture-bringer Lugh. In Ireland, races and games are held in his name and that of his mother, Tailtiu. Second, the holiday is the Saxon Feast of Bread, at which the first of the grain harvest is consumed in ritual loaves. This later was adopted by the early Christians. 241

Lammas celebrates the first of three harvest celebrations in the Craft. It marks the beginning of autumn, the start of the harvest cycle, and relies on the early crops of ripening grain and any fruits and vegetables ready to be harvested. It is associated with bread because grain is one of the first crops harvested. Those in the Craft often give thanks and honor to gods and goddesses of the harvest and of death and resurrection.

During Lammas, all grains, especially corn and wheat, corn dollies, sun wheels, bread, harvesting and threshing tools and the harvest full moon are sacred. Altar decorations might include corn dollies or corncob dolls to symbolize the Mother Goddess of the Harvest. Other decorations should include summer flowers and grains. You might also wish to have a loaf of whole cracked wheat or multigrain bread upon the altar, baked in the shape of the sun to feed your coven in honor of their hard work and as a blessing.

On Lammas the Practitioner should have the colors red, orange, gold, yellow, green, gray and tans to light browns around them, for these are the colors of Lammas.

Work spells of Prosperity for the coming year. Rituals for an abundant life are also good so make sure you have a combination of yellow diamonds, aventurine, Sardonyx, Peridot, and citrine stones at your disposal. These are the stones that vibrate and represent Lammas well.

Herbs associated with this first harvest ritual are Acacia flowers, aloes, chamomile, cornstalks, cyclamen, fenugreek, frankincense, heather, hollyhock, myrtle, oak leaves, passionflower, rose, rose hips, rosemary, sandalwood, sunflowers and wheat.

Visits to fields, orchards, lakes and ancient wells are traditional rites to partake on this special occasion. This is to give thanks for the bountiful harvest of the first crop. It is considered taboo not to share your food with others now, so be sure that your Lammas feast includes strangers who are hungry.

Activities appropriate for this time of the year are baking bread, wheat weaving and making corn dollies or other god and goddess symbols. You may want to string Indian corn on black thread to make a necklace, or bake cornbread sticks shaped like little

ears of corn for your Sabbat cakes. The corn dolly may be used as a fertility amulet and an altar piece.

Bake Lammas bread in the form of a god-figure or sun wheel. These should be eaten in your Lammas Ceremony. We have included 242

a recipe for Lammas Bread so that your holiday will be magical and tasteful. We call this your ritual Lammas first harvest bread.

1 C Wheat Flour 1/2 teaspoon baking soda 2
teaspoons Salt 3/4 teaspoon Nutmeg
1/2 C Brown Sugar 1 C Butter 1/2 C walnuts
3 Medium Apples (chopped) 1 C Raisins 1
teaspoon Cinnamon 1 teaspoon Ginger 1 1/2
C Rolled Oats 1 Egg 1 1/2 tsp. orange extract

Mix all ingredients together, place in a greased nine inch cake pan. Bake at 350 degrees for about thirty minutes, until the bread is completely baked. You can always use the toothpick test to make sure. Shape the bread into items for the season to make it more special. You can use this for other ritual as well, and the fruits and nuts may be changed for different seasons.

Lammas would not be complete without the traditional Lammas Loaf. To make this delicious magical loaf use the following:

1 1/2 c milk 1/2 c warm water 1/4 c honey 1/3 c
butter 1 tsp. salt 2 pkgs. yeast 2 c whole wheat flour
1/4 cup wheat germ
1/4 c Malt Wheat Flakes 2/3 cup crushed seven

grain cereal

1 egg 2 c unbleached all-purpose flour

Place yeast in warm water with honey. Mix all dry ingredients, and mix the butter with flour. It can help to soften the butter to a liquid consistency. Mix in milk and yeast mixture; knead about 10 minutes, adding flour as necessary to make a rather dry dough. Cover and let rise until doubled, about one and a half hour. Punch down, and roll out ropes about as thick as your little finger. On parchment paper and a cookie sheet, make a Barley Man, mold torso, arms, legs, and head, moistening the dough where parts join and pinching together. Make him appear skinny, as he'll grow during the second rise. Make small items shaped as wheat to place at his sides. Let your doe rise for approximately 20 min and then bake. Bake at 350 degrees for 45 minutes to one hour; watch closely towards the end.

The wheat celebrates the harvest, while the Barley Man honors Lugh, the sacrificed Sun God, whose sacrifice sustains us. 243

The malted or sprouted grain in the loaf reminds us of the rebirth which is inherent in death.

To make sure each person has some activity to do. Cause them to create a Solar Wheel or a Corn Man Wheel using a wire coat hanger, cardboard, and several ears of Indian corn complete with the husks. It's very simple; bend the wire hanger into a circle keeping the hook outward to act as a hanger. Cut out a small cardboard circle to glue the tips of the ears of corn onto. Make sure you use a flour and water paste. You may want to create your Corn Man Wheel as a pentagram using five ears, or a Solar Wheel using eight ears to represent one ear for each Sabbat. Attach the ears of corn around the perimeter of the wire circle. Wrap the husks around and glue where necessary, leave some of the husks hanging loose to fray out from the edges and make it more decorative. Where the ears of corn meet in the center, glue them together. This is where the cardboard circle comes in to use.

Traditional Foods for the Lughnassadh Festival include homemade breads made of wheat, oat and especially cornbread. Corn, potatoes, berry pies, barley cakes, nuts, wild berries, apples, rice,

roasted lamb, acorns, crab apples, summer squash, turnips, oats, all grains and all First Harvest foods. Traditional drinks are elderberry wine, ale and meadowsweet tea. Plan on a festival and whenever possible use these magical items to live a better life.

The festival next Sabbat we will explore is Mabon, the Autumn Equinox. This usually takes place September 20th to September 23rd. The Practitioners of antiquity didn't have the ability to determine astrological positions as we do today. The European peasantry, therefore, celebrated this Sabbat on September 25th; actually, the Celts marked their days from sundown to sundown, so the Mabon celebration actually started on the sundown of our September 24th.

Today, with the help of technology, we can calculate the exact day of the Equinox; the date when the sun enters the sign of Libra, the Balanced Scales, which appropriately fits the Equinox.

September 25th is a medieval holiday which the Church Christianized as their holiday of "Michaelmas," a feast in honor of the Archangel Michael. It is thought that the Roman Catholic Church at some point considered assigning the

quarter dates to the four Archangels, since they had assigned the cross quarters to the four gospel-writers. 244

Making the Vernal Equinox a holiday called "Gabrielmas" in honor of the angel Gabriel's and even The Virgin Mary having our sacred holiday of Lady Day. This would act as a conversion tool.

This Sabbat can also be known as: the Second Harvest Festival, Feast of Avalon, Cornucopia, Wine Harvest, the Fall Equinox, Harvest Home, the Autumnal or Autumn Equinox, Festival of Dionysus, Alban Elfed, Winter Finding, or Equinozio di Autunno (Strega). The full moon closest to the Autumn Equinox is called the Harvest Moon, and farmers would harvest their crops by this moonlight as part of the Second Harvest celebration.

Mabon marks the completion of harvesting the crops; it is a time for thanksgiving and time to prepare for the onset of dark nights and winter chill. The autumn equinox is a time of balance; day and night are equal but we are moving towards the dark phase and the colder times. The God, Lord of the Greenwood in the summer and the Corn King at Lughnasadh now are in their last days upon the earth as the God of wine, music, and dance, before making his descent to the underworld to take up his

role as Dread Lord of Shadows and the Ruler of Winter.

Mabon is a time to take stock of what we have harvested. A time of reflection and preparation for the months to come. This is the time to balance ourselves, our male to female, dark to light. The key action at Mabon is giving thanks. At the Autumn Equinox, the Sun's strength also begins to fade until Winter Solstice in December.

Items that you will need for this festival are Garlands, corn, apples, pinecones, gourds, acorns, wheat, dried leaves and horns of plenty (cornucopias).

At the holy festival, drape yourself in Reds, oranges, yellows, deep gold's, browns, russets, maroons, indigos and violets. For These are the colors pleasing at Mabon. In the story of Mabon, the god disappears, taken from his mother, Modron, when only three nights old. Mabon is freed with the help of the wisdom of the most ancient living animals on the earth. These are the blackbird, stag, owl, eagle and salmon. But it appeared that Mabon has been quite happy dwelling in Modron's magical Other world which is representative of Modron's

womb. He is then destined to be reborn as his mother's champion, the Son of Light. Mabon's light has been drawn into the Earth, gathering strength and wisdom to become a new seed.

In a Greek story of the season, The beautiful daughter of Demeter and Zeus, Persephone is the focus of the story resulting in the division of the seasons, giving us the sweetness of Spring and the

245

was returned of to her mother's side, the earth would perish. bitterness of Winter. Hades did not woo the beautiful Persephone; he abducted her and took her to his underground kingdom. After much protest, Persephone came to love the cold blooded king of the underworld but her mother, Demeter, was consumed with rage and sorrow. She demonstrated her anger by punishing the earth's inhabitants, gentle and fierce with bitter cold and blustering winds. Unless Persephone

Hermes came to the rescue. He entered the kingdom of Hades and negotiated a compromise between the (cold and selfish) Hades and the (loving and caring) Demeter. All agreed that Persephone would to spend part of the year with her husband, Hades, and part of the year with her mother, Demeter. Hades not being very trusting feeds her a pomegranate, which she ate six seeds. This would determine how long she could remain on earth with her parents.

When Persephone is with Hades the earth is wracked by the sorrow of her mother. But, when Persephone returns from the underworld to walk the earth again, Demeter pours forth the blessings of

Spring to welcome her beloved daughter home.

Mabon is rather like Thanksgiving for pagans. The foods of Mabon consist of the second harvest, so grains, fruit and vegetables predominate. Pagan activities for the Sabbat include the making of wine and the adorning of graves. It is considered taboo to pass burial sites and not honor the dead on this day. Another traditional practice is to walk wild places and forests, gathering seedpods and dried plants to decorate home or altar or to save for future herbal magic.

Spellcraft for protection, wealth and prosperity, security and self-confidence are appropriate for Mabon. You can also practice spells to bring into balance and harmony the energies in a room, home or situation.

Ritual actions might include the praising or honoring of fruit and natural grains as proof of your love of the Goddess and God. River and stream stones gathered over the summer can be empowered now for various purposes.

The stones sacred to this Sabbat are Amethyst, carnelian, lapis lazuli, sapphire, yellow agate and yellow topaz. The practitioner is wise to

collect Acorns, gather aloe's wood, asters, benzoin,
cedar, chrysanthemums, cinnamon, cloves, ferns,
frankincense, hazel, honeysuckle, hops, ivy, jasmine,
marigold, milkweed, musk, myrrh, 246

oak leaves, passionflower, pine, pomegranate, roses, sage, Solomon's seal, thistles, tobacco and various vines.

The next Holy Day of the Practitioner is called Samhain. This is the Sabbat that is most associated with witches, and things that are in the shadows.

Originally, this Sabbats celebrated on October 31st, although some Traditions prefer the date of November 1st.

Other names for this Sabbat are Shadowfest, Martinmas, or Old Hallowmas. Hallowe'en, Hallowmas, All Hallow's Eve, Halloween, Day of the Dead, Feast of Spirits, Third Harvest, Samonios, All Saint's Eve, Celtic New Year, Celtic Winter, Samana, Festival of Pamona, and Santos are also used. Though this Holiday is celebrated on October 31st, All Hallows Eve falls on November 7th, and Martinmas on November 11th.

It is written that on this of most holy days, the spirits are given reign over the land of the living. The practitioner should partake of no flesh for three days before and three days after. On this day, the disembodied spirits of all those who have died

can come back in search of living bodies to possess for the next year. This is their one chance to live in the flesh again. For this reason, I entreat you, Do not break the rite and consume flesh of animal, fowl, or fish.

Customs from our past show this was a feared event. The still-living did not want to be possessed. So on the night of October 31, all town people would extinguish the fires in their homes, to make them cold and undesirable. They then dress up in all manner of ghoulish costumes and noisily paraded around the neighborhood, being as destructive as possible in order to frighten away spirits looking for bodies to possess. The Romans adopted the Celtic practices as their own. But in the first century AD, Samhain was assimilated into celebrations of some of the other Roman traditions that took place in October, such as their day to honor Pomona, the Roman goddess of fruit and trees. The symbol of Pomona is the apple, which might explain the origin of our modern tradition of bobbing for apples on Halloween.

The practices changed over time to become more ritualized. As belief in spirit possession faded

into the past. The practice of dressing up like hobgoblins, ghosts, and witches took on a more ceremonial role to the town's folk, but not the practitioner. They still take precautions and honor the dead in their rituals and chants on Samhain. 247

The custom of Halloween was brought to America in the 1840's by Irish immigrants fleeing their country's potato famine. At that time, the favorite pranks in New England included tipping over outhouses and unhinging fence gates. The custom of trick-or-treating is thought to have originated not with the Irish Celts, but with a ninth-century European custom called souling. On November 2, All Souls Day, early Christians would walk from village to village begging for "soul cakes," made out of square pieces of bread with currants. The more soul cakes the beggars would receive, the more prayers they would promise to say on behalf of the dead relatives of the donors. At the time, it was believed that the dead remained in limbo for a time after death, and that prayer, even by strangers, could expedite a soul's passage to heaven. As we can see this trick-or-treat was just another scam pulled by Christians on unsuspecting commoners.

The symbolism of this Sabbat is The Third (and final) Harvest, it marks the end of summer, the beginning of winter. It is a time of death when the Dead are honored. "Samhain" means "End of Summer". Its historical origin is The Feast of the

Dead in Celtic lands. It is believed that on this night, the veil Between the Worlds is at its thinnest point, making this an excellent time to communicate with the Other Side. This is the Witches New Year.

During this season we see Cauldrons, jack o' lanterns, masks, balefires, witches brooms, bats, owls, and ravens and the ever-present witch and black cat. All Practitioners are dressed in Orange, black, brown, golden yellow and red. During your Sabbath it is important that you cover your alter in Black. This is in honor of the waxing moon and those that have passed.

Bless all gemstones during your ritual especially Carnelian, jet, obsidian and onyx. This is a time of extreme power when the spirits are free to cross the boundaries of shadows and come to your aid more easily. Bless your herbs by passing them around the coven. As you pass the herbs say this chant:

Sister to sister we bless these herbs Through
the love of the Earth who gave us birth
Through the youth of the Maiden who gives
us joy Through the eyes of the Crone who
gives us wisdom.

Herbs that are special to this season are
yellow cedar, acorn, allspice, apple, autumn flowers,
catnip, corn, chrysanthemums, 248

dittany of Crete, fall leaves (especially oak), ferns, flax, fumitory, gourds, grains, hazel, heather, mandrake, mugwort, mullein, nightshade, pear, pumpkin, sage, straw, thistle, turnip, wormwood. These gathered on this Sabbath should only be gathered by a maiden, that is to say those under the age of 40.

The gods draw near to Earth at Samhain, as at all the turning points of the Celtic year.

The Celts called this time Oidhche Shamhna. Many rituals of Oidhche Shamhna involved hospitality for dead ancestors. Celts put out food and drink for the dead with great ceremony, and left their windows, doors, and gates unlocked to give the dead free passage into their homes. Swarms of spirits poured into our world on November Eve, but not all of these spirits were friendly. You must carved the images of spirit-guardians onto turnips and set these "jack-o- lanterns" before their doors to keep out unwelcome visitors from the Other world.

For Samhain you will need: Masks, A rope, food for a feast, candles, and carved turnips, pumpkins, or other vegetables as decorations. You should also bring some Paper with writing defined

by the user what his wishes for the New Year may bring so that he may present this to the entire group for their guidance and assistance.

You must cast your circle as the sun sets. It should be announced by the High Priestess, "Now is the last setting of the sun upon the year that was, now we must go into the year that is. We mask our faces so the dead may not find us, inviting only those we love to accompany us into this circle and into our feasting tonight."

Two practitioners should now suspend a rope, tied in a large circle, forming a portal to the other side. The High Priestess shall open the portal and allow those invited guests from the spirit world to enter. She shall say: "Enter, friends, loves, family, and all who wish to celebrate this night with us, let all be welcomed within that possess the spirit of goodness and live by our law, and the pact which we have with that one creator of all living things. Let no evil come within, or surly they shall be bound to roam between the worlds in abyss of nothing forever, so mote it be."

Each person shall now give their sacrifice of a piece of paper detailing a resolution for the New

Year. When the paper is burned in the fire, there is no "turning back," that thing is destroyed, and a commitment is made. If what is given up is a material possession, it must be dealt with before Yule, preferably by donating to charity privately. No one knows what is written but the person who wrote it 249

and the Gods, so no one may "make" you give something up. It is the law the "sacrifice is of something that binds the soul to this plain, a hurt or guilt." After all the papers are brought out, the priest or priestess speaks, "Now we sacrifice that which binds us, guilt, addictions and pains, to make a new start before the gods. Now is the darkness of the year and the time of testing. The Deep of the love of the Gods be with you all and be free of your Bonds. As the Goddess has decreed, Arise, Excel, Be Free!"

The Circle is closed, and feasting commences. It is now time to start your feast of the dead. Use a black tablecloth and table settings. Make sure you have one empty place set for the dead. Drape this place at the head of the table for the spirits with a black cloth. This feast must be done in silence, without a word spoken. It is also customary to light a new candle for the 'new year'.

As we end this holy pagan festival, so shall we end this edition. We hope that what you have read and found it to be informative. The information supplied is done so in good faith that you will use

it wisely. Try some of the rites and spells in this book. Keep a journal of your workings and the results. Who know you may move the web of the great cosmos and the true guardians of the craft will summons you and take you under their wing. I do understand that the information given herein was somewhat general, but as a beginning practitioner. Until the next volume.....